Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B *



Dam Safety Guidelines

Part III: An Owner's Guidance Manual



printed on recycled paper

<u> Flectronic Filing - Received Clerk's Office : N8/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018. Xbts A & B * *</u>



Dam Safety Guidelines

Part III: An Owner's Guidance Manual

Water Resources Program Dam Safety Section PO Box 47600 Olympia, Washington 98504-7600 (360) 407-6208 Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *

AN OWNER'S GUIDANCE MANUAL

INTRODUCTION

The **Dam Safety Guidelines** are intended to provide dam owners, operators and design engineers with information on activities, procedures and requirements involved in the planning, design, construction, operation and maintenance of dams in the State of Washington. In particular, they provide guidance in meeting the requirements identified in the **Dam Safety Regulations**, Chapter 173-175 WAC. For convenience of the various expected users, the guidelines have been organized into four basic units entitled:

- Part I General Information and Owner Responsibilities
- Part II Project Planning and Approval of Dam Construction or Modification
- Part III An Owner's Guidance Manual
- Part IV Dam Design and Construction

Technical Notes have also been prepared to provide technical information on engineering design and analysis of various project elements. For clarity, all important definitions and terms pertinent to State of Washington dam safety activities are summarized in Appendix A of Part IV.

Part III of the guidelines is a reference manual for dam owners to use in developing plans for operation, monitoring, annual inspection and long term maintenance of their facilities. The manual was prepared by the Association of State Dam Safety Officials (ASDSO) and the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA). Particular emphasis is given in Chapters 5, 6 and 7 to the importance of including procedures for inspection, monitoring and maintenance as part of the normal operation of a project.

Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *

DAM SAFETY: AN OWNER'S GUIDANCE MANUAL

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY 12/86

AN APPROACH TO DAM SAFETY

There is an urgent and continuing need for dam safety in the United States because of thousands of dams are now in place across the U.S. and many more are being built each year. These dams are essential elements of the national infrastructure, but the public risk in case of failure is great; large and growing numbers of lives and valuable properties are at stake. Although there are many who are concerned about dam safety, legal and moral responsibility essentially rests with the dam owner.

Dam owners serve society by meeting important national needs and of course, may also profit from dam operations. However, these reasons do not justify the utility and effectiveness of ownership if the owner cannot provide safety for people and property. The costs of dam safety are small in comparison to those which follow dam failure, particularly in our modern "litigious" society. Liability due to failure could easily offset years of profitability.

The dam owner can directly influence the safety of a dam. Owners can and should develop their own safety program which includes such important elements as inspecting, monitoring through instrumentation, maintaining the structure, emergency action planning and operating. Such a program is directly related to the dam structure and its immediate environment and depends on the owner's knowledge of the dam and how it works.

INTRODUCTION TO DAMS

Dams may be either man-made or exist because of natural phenomena, such as landslides or glacial deposition. The majority of dams are manmade structures normally constructed of earthfill or concrete. It is important that a dam owner be aware of the different types of dams, essential component parts of a dam, important physical conditions likely to influence the dam, and how the key components function

HAZARDS, RISK, FAILURES

Present national loss statistics from dam failure fully justify the need for dam owners to better understand the public risks involved with dam ownership, the kinds of hazards that promote these risks and the reasons why dams fail. Public risk is high because people have been allowed to settle below dams in potential inundation zones and because new dams are being built in less than ideal sites.

Other elements of risk include natural phenomena such as floods, earthquakes and landslides. These hazards threaten dam structures and their surroundings. Floods that exceed the capacity of a dam's spillway and then erode the dam or abutments are particularly hazardous, as is seismic activity that may cause cracking or seepage Similarly, debris from landslides may block a dam's spillway and cause an overflow wave that erodes the abutments and ultimately weaken the structure.

The International Commission of Large Dams (ICOLD) has determined that the three major categories of dam failure are overtopping by flood, foundation defects and piping. For earthen dams, the major reason for failure was piping or seepage. For concrete dams, the major reasons for failure were associated with foundations. Overtopping was a significant cause of dam failure primarily in cases where there was an inadequate spillway.

DEVELOPING A DAM SAFETY PROGRAM

Recognition of the causes and possible impacts of dam failure points out the need for a program to enhance dam safety. Such a program must be based on a safety evaluation to determine a dam's structural and operational safety. The evaluation should identify problems and recommend either remedial repairs, operational restrictions and modifications, or further analyses and studies to determine solutions.

A safety program comprises several components that address the spectrum of possible actions to be taken over the short and long term. Development of a safety program involves a phased process beginning with collection and review of existing information, proceeding to detailed inspections and analyses, and culminating with formal documentation. Much of the preliminary work can be accomplished by the dam owner with the assistance of state and local public agencies However, depending upon the number and seriousness of problems identified by the initial assessment, professional assistance by qualified engineers and contractors may be required.

Information presented in this manual provides direction on how to proceed with establishing an action to increase the safety of a dam. The discussion details technical and procedural components of the safety program, and necessary forms are provided.

The program of inspection for both the initial and continuing safety evaluations establishes the condition of the dam and provides the information necessary for determining specific actions to be taken regarding repairs, operations, and monitoring. The program is cyclical recognizing the need for continued vigilance. Emergency action can hopefully be avoided, but a well thought out plan of action in case of imminent or actual failure can greatly reduce damage and possible loss of life.

INSPECTION GUIDELINES

An effective inspection program is essential to identify problems and to provide for safe maintenance of a dam. The inspection program should involve three types of inspections: (1) periodic technical inspections, (2) periodic maintenance inspections, and (3) informal observations by project personnel as they operate the dam. Technical inspections involve specialists familiar with the design and construction of dams and include assessments of structure safety. Maintenance inspections are performed more frequently than technical inspections in order to detect, at an early stage, any detrimental developments in the dam; they involve assessment of operational capability as well as structural stability. The third type of inspection is actually a continuing effort by onsite project personnel (dam tenders, powerhouse operators, maintenance personnel) performed in the course of their normal duties.

INSTRUMENTATION AND MONITORING GUIDELINES

Instrumentation of a dam furnishes data to determine if the completed structure is functioning as intended and provides a continuing surveillance of the structure to warn of any unsafe developments.

Means and methods available to monitor physical phenomena that can lead to a dam failure include a wide spectrum of instruments and procedures ranging from very simple to very complex. Any program of dam safety instrumentation must involve proper design consistent with other project components, must be based on prevailing geotechnical conditions at the dam, and must include consideration of the hydrologic and hydraulic factors present both before and after the project is in operation Instrumentation designed for monitoring potential deficiencies at existing dams must take into account the threat to life and property that the dam presents. Thus, the extent and nature of the instrumentation depends not only on the complexity of the dam and the size of the reservoir, but also on the potential for loss of life and property downstream.

An instrumentation program should involve instruments and evaluation methods that are as simple and straightforward as the project will allow. Moreover, the dam owner should make a definite commitment to a continuing monitoring program; if the program is not continuing, the installation of instruments and procedures will be wasted. Obviously, the involvement of qualified personnel in the design, installation, monitoring, and evaluation of an instrumentation system is of prime importance to the success of the program.

Instrumentation and proper monitoring and evaluation are extremely valuable in determining the performance of a dam. Specific information that instrumentation can provide includes:

- Warning of a problem
- Definition of and analyzing a problem
- Proof that behavior is as expected
- Remedial action performance evaluation

MAINTENANCE GUIDELINES

A good maintenance program will protect a dam against deterioration and prolong its life. A poorly maintained dam will deteriorate and can fail. Nearly all the components of a dam and the materials used for dam construction are susceptible to damaging deterioration if not properly maintained A good maintenance program provides not only protection for the owner, but for the general public as well. Furthermore, the cost of a proper maintenance program is small compared to the cost of major repairs or the loss of life and property and resultant litigation against the dam owner. A dam owner should develop a basic maintenance program based primarily on systematic and frequent inspections. Inspections, as noted in Chapter 5, should be done monthly and after major flood or earthquake events. During each inspection, a checklist of items calling for maintenance should be used.

EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN GUIDELINES

Although most dam owners have a high level of confidence in the structures they own and are certain their dams will not fail, history has shown that on occasion dams do fail and that often these failures cause loss of life, injuries and extensive property damage. A dam owner should prepare for this possibility by developing an emergency action plan which provides a systematic means to:

- Identify emergency conditions threatening a dam
- Expedite effective response actions to prevent failure
- Reduce loss of life and property damage should failure occur

A dam owner is responsible for preparing a plan covering these measures and listings actions that the owner and operating personnel should take. He should be familar with the local government officials and agencies responsible for warning and evacuating the public. It is important that dam owners make full use of others who are concerned with dam safety; emergency plans, will be more effective if they integrate the actions of others who can expedite response. People and organizations with whom the dam owner should consult in preparing an emergency action plan include numerous local participants, state and federal agencies.

An essential part of the emergency action plan is a list of agencies/ persons to be notified in the event of a potential failure. Possible inclusions for this list should be obtained from and coordinated with local law enforcement agencies and local disaster emergency services. These are key people or agencies who can activate public warning and evacuation procedures or who might be able to assist the dam owner in delaying or preventing failure.

Certain key elements must be included in every notification plan: Information about potential inundation (flooding) areas and travel times for the breach (flood) wave is essential. Inundation maps are especially useful in local warning and evacuation planning. Detailed information about identification of inundation areas or the development of maps can be found by contacting the State Engineer's Office or local planning offices.

OPERATIONS PLAN GUIDELINES

Establishing an operations procedure or plan calls for detailed:

- Dam and reservoir physical characteristics data
- Descriptions of dam components
- Operations instructions for oper-
- able mechanismsInspection instructions
- Inspection instructions
 Instrumentation and monitoring
- guidelines
- Maintenance operations guidelines
- Emergency operations guidelines
- Bibliographical information

A schedule should be established to include both day-to-day tasks and tasks performed less frequently throughout the year. The schedule formalizes inspection and maintenance procedures so that even an inexperienced person can determine when a task is to be done.

MEASURES TO REDUCE THE CONSEQUENCES OF DAM FAILURE

Liabilities which are determined following a dam failure strongly affect both organizations and individuals, governments and dam owners. Establishing liability is the legal means developed by society to recover damages due to a "wrong" (in this case, lack of dam safety) and represents another perspective on the dam safety problem. A thorough understanding of this legal process can help the dam owner decide the steps to be taken to reduce liability.

The dam owner can directly and indirectly influence the introduction and use of a variety of other measures that will serve to reduce the consequences of dam failure. For example, insurance against the costs which will accrue after a failure will save the dam owner money by spreading costs from a single dam owner to others. Some land use measures instituted by governments represent better means of mitigating future disasters. If people are restricted from living in inundation zones, then safety is radically improved Instituting land use measures represents one of the most effective ways to save lives and property over the long term, but such steps are not always acceptable to governments. Thus, given that lives and property are at stake, increasing public awareness and governmental planning are vital measures that also must be considered as ways to reduce the consequences of dam failure.

Dam owners can obtain insurance directly and should do so. The other measures discussed here -- land use, public awareness and preparedness planning -- are essentially controlled by local governments. Therefore, dam owners would be wise to encourage as strongly as possible awareness and action in the public sector. Finally, they may also wish to hire consultants from the private sector when the information needed for prudent decisions exceeds their own expertise.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This dam owner's guidance manual is the result of the work of many people and organizations. The Federal Emergency Management Agency supplied the impetus and funding for the project. The Colorado Division of Disaster Emergency Services (DODES) (John P. Byrne, Director) undertook the actual development of the manual and contributed several of the chapters. Jeris A. Danielson, Colorado State Engineer and John P. Byrne served as Co-chairmen of the technical advisory committee. Patricia Hagan, DODES Project Officer, led the development and writing team of Jack Truby, DODES and Professors Lynn Johnson P.E. and Charles Bartholomew P.E. (University of Colorado at Denver, Department of Civil Engineering). Hal Simpson, Colorado Deputy State Engineer, also provided direction and assistance.

Development of this national manual would not have been possible without drawing from the excellent dam safety manuals now in use by many states. In particular, the following states provided considerable assistance: Arkansas, Colorado, Kentucky, North Carolina, North Dakota, Ohio, Pennsylvania, Virginia and Wyoming; also, STS Consultants. The Colorado, Ohio, and Pennsylvania manuals were particularly helpful and supplied many of the engineering fundementals and graphics. The authors are indebted to the cochairmen and the members of the technical advisory committee of dam safety officials – group representing a wide range of expertise and local insights – who helped define dam owners' needs and thus, the scope of this book.

John Akolt - Colorado John Diebel - Colorado James Doody - California Joseph Ellam - Pennsylvania Charles Gardner - North Carolina Dan Robert Lawrence - Arizona William Riebsame - Colorado

Special thanks are extended to Bill Riebsame, University of Colorado, Johan Stolpe and David Butler, as well as Steve Slane and Deborah Handerhan, from the Colorado State Design Center, who contributed significantly to the graphic production.

The production team could not have accomplished such a large task without the support of Irwin Glassman, DODES Planning Chief, and the entire DODES staff. Special recognition goes to Nora Rimando for her dedication, creativity and insight in typing the manual

CHAPTER 9 OPERATIONS GUIDELINES

9.0	General	75
9.1	Operations Plan Guidelines	75
9.1.1	Background Data	75
9.1.2	Operations Instructions and Records	76
9.2	Schedule of Routine Tasks	76
9.3	Record Keeping	76

CHAPTER 10 REDUCING THE CONSEQUENCES OF DAM FAILURE

10.0	Supplements to a Dam Safety Program	79
10.1	Liability	79
10.2	Measures to Reduce the Consequences of Dam Failure	80
10.2.1	Insurance	80
10.2.2	Governmental Assistance	81
10.2.3	Consultants Role in Dam Safety	82

APPENDIXES

Α	Inspection Forms	83
В	Report Form	95
С	Glossary	99
D	Selected Bibliography	13
s - F		

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 AN APPROACH TO DAM SAFETY

1.0	General	1
1.1	Urgency for Dam Safety	1
1.2	Dam Ownership and Safety	1
1.3	The Increasing Complexity of the Dam Safety Problem	1
1.4	An Approach to Dam Safety	2

CHAPTER 2 INTRODUCTION TO DAMS

2.0	General
2.1	The Watershed System
2.2	Types of Dams
2.3	Water Retention Ability
2.4	Release of Water

CHAPTER 3 HAZARDS, RISKS, FAILURES

3.0	General	9
3.1	Hazards As Sources of Risk	9
3.1.1	Natural Hazards That Threaten Dams	9
3.1.2	Hazards From Human Activity	11
3.2	Site-Specific Structural Risk	12
33	Sources of Dam Failure	12
3.3.1	Three Categories of Structural Failure	12
3.3.2	Failures By Dam Type	13
333	Age And Its Relation To Failure	15

CHAPTER 4 DEVELOPING A SAFETY PROGRAM

4.0	Objectives of a Safety Program	17
4.1	Guidelines for Assessing Existing Conditions	17
4.2	Procedural Guidelines - A Source Book	18
43	Documenting the Safety Program	18

CHAPTER 5 INSPECTION GUIDELINES

5.0	Introduction	21
5.1	Inspection Guidelines	21
5.2	Organizing for Inspection	22
5.3	Embankment Dams and Structures	23
5.3.1	Upstream Slope	23
5.3.2	Downstream Slope	23
5.3.3	Crest	24
5.3.4	Seepage Areas	24
5.4	Concrete Dams and Structures	24
5.5	Spillways	26
5.6	Inlets, Outlets, and Drains	27
5.7	Other Areas	29

Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *

CHAPTER 6 INSTRUMENTATION AND MONITORING GUIDELINES

6.0	General	51
6.1	Reasons for Instrumentation	51
6.2	Instrument Types and Usage	52
62.1	Visual Observations	52
6.2.2	Movement	52
6.2.3	Pore Pressure and Uplift Pressure	54
6.2.4	Water Level and Flow	55
6.2.5	Seepage Flow	55
6.2.6	Water Quality	55
6.2.7	Temperature	56
6.2.8	Crack and Joint Size	56
6.2.9	Seismic Activity	57
6.2.10	Weather and Precipitation	57
6.2.11	Stress and Strain	57
6.3	Frequency of Monitoring	57

CHAPTER 7 MAINTENANCE GUIDELINES

7.0	General	61
7.1	Maintenance Priorities	61
7.1.1	Immediate Maintenance	61
7.1.2	Required Maintenance at Earliest Possible Date	61
7.1.3	Continuing Maintenance	61
7.2	Specific Maintenance Items	62
7.2.1	Earthwork Maintenance and Repair	62
7.2.2	Riprap Maintenance and Repair	63
723	Vegetation Maintenance	64
7.2.4	Livestock Control	64
7.2.5	Rodent Damage Control	64
7.2.6	Traffic Damage Control	65
7.2.7	Mechanical Maintenance	65
7.2.8	Electrical Maintenance	6 6
7.2.9	Cleaning	6 6
7.2.10	Concrete Maintenance	6 6
7.2.11	Metal Component Maintenance	66

CHAPTER 8 EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN GUIDELINES

8.0	The Emergency Action Plan	69
8.1	Identification of Emergency Conditions and Initiation of	
	Emergency Response Actions	70
8.2	Guidelines for Emergency Notification	71

Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1.1	Loss of Life and Property from Notable U.S. Dam	
	Failures	2
3.1	Hazard Potential Classification for Dams	11
3.2	Examples of Earthen Dam Failures	15
3.3	Examples of Concrete Dam Failures	15
5.1	Inspection Guidelines Directory	19
5.2	Inspection Equipment and Its Use	22
6.1	Instrumentation and Monitoring Guidelines Directory	49
7.1	Maintenance Guidelines Directory	59
8.1	Emergency Action Guidelines Directory	67
8.2	Potential Problems and Immediate Response Actions	-71
8.3	Checklist for Dam Emergency Plans	72
9.1	Operation Plan - Schedule of Routine Tasks	77
10.1	Comparison of Warning Success for Selected Dam Failures	
	and Flash Floods	Q1

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2.1	Typical Dam Site	4
2.2	Embankment Dams	4
2.3	Concrete Gravity Dam	5
2.4	Concrete Arch Dam	5
2.5	Cutoff Trench and Upstream Blanket	7
3.1	Estimated Proportion of Land in Floodplain	10
3.2	Seismic Risk Map of the United States	11
3.3	Dam Failures 1900-1975	13
3.4	Failed Dams, in Percent of Dams Built	13
35	Dam Failures, Age in Years	14
4.1	Procedural Guidelines for a Dam Safety Program	18
5.3.1	Inspection Guidelines - Embankment Upstream Slope	31
5.3.2	Downstream Slope	32
5.3.3	Embankment Crest	35
5.3.4	Embankment Seepage Areas	39
5.4	Concrete Upstream Slope	42
55	Spillways	42
5.6	Inlets, Outlets and Drains	46
6.1a	Installation of Permanent Points	52
6.1b	Plan of Alignment System	52
6.2	Monitoring Cracks on Embankment	53
6.3a	Inclinometer	53
6.3b	Plot of Inclinometer Readings	53
6.4	Measuring Displacements	54
65	Porous Stone Piezometer	55
6.6	Typical Observation Well Installation	55
67	Standard Weirs	56
6.8	Parshall Flume	56
6.9	Bucket and Stopwatch Method	57

CHAPTER 1 AN APPROACH TO DAM SAFETY

1.0 GENERAL

This manual is a safety guide for dam owners. There is a critical and continuing need for dam safety because of the thousands of dams now in place and the many new dams built each year Although these dams are essential elements of the national infra-structure, the risks to the public posed by their possible failure are great; large and growing number of lives and valuable property are at stake. Although there are many who are concerned about dam safety, legal and moral responsibility essentially rests with the dam owner.

1.1 URGENCY FOR SAFETY

The critical need for dam safety is clear. World and national statistics on dam failures show an unacceptable record of losses in both lives and property. The International Commission on Large Dams (ICOLD) reports that more than 8000 people have died so far this century because of the failure of major dams The record for U.S. losses from major dam failures in recent years, shown in Table 1.1 is also not encouraging. Actual national losses are much higher than indicated because the statistics shown cover neither small dam failures nor many combinations of dam failure and natural flooding events. A more specific examination of the national experience shows that over an 18-year period (1965-1983) thirty lesser failures, or serious incidents that almost led to failure. occurred in Colorado. The Johnstown, Pennsylvania disaster of 1889 is regarded as one of the nation's great catastrophes, and the potential for future similar catastrophes due to dam failure remains strong. Only a cooperative effort in dam safety involving owners and communities can lessen this potential

1.2 DAM OWNERSHIP AND SAFETY

This manual can be applied to dams owned and operated by a wide range of organizations and people, including state and local governments, public and private agencies, and private citizens. Typical reasons for building dams include water storage for human consumption, agricultural production, power generation, flood control, reduction of soil erosion and recreation. Thus, dam owners serve society by meeting important national needs and may also personally profit from dam operations. However, these are not sufficient reasons for building or owning a dam if the owner cannot provide safety for people and property in potential inundation zones.

In both financial and moral terms, successful dam ownership and the maintenance of safety standards go hand in hand Investment in dam safety should be accepted as an integral part of project costs and not viewed as an expendable item that can be eliminated if a budget becomes tight (Jansen, 1980). The costs of dam safety are small in comparison to those which follow dam failure, particularly in our modern "litigious" society Liability due to a failure would probably negate years of potential profits. Many different concerns and possible rewards result from dam ownership, but in the end, success will be in large part measured by a continuing record of dam safety

1.3 THE INCREASING COMPLEXITY OF THE DAM SAFETY PROBLEM

As national needs for water intensify and the value of water increases, more dams are being built. At the same time, many existing dams are reaching or passing their design life spans and, for various reasons, people continue to settle near dams? Further, as builders are forced to use poorer sites for dams, the job of protecting life and property becomes more difficult Therefore, as dam

construction continues and the population grows, exposure of the public to dam failure hazards increases and the overall safety problem becomes more difficult.

Governments across the nation have shown increasing concern for this problem and have enacted laws, statutes and regulations that place an increased burden of responsibility on the dam owner. In most states, dam owners are held strictly liable for losses or damages resulting from dam failure. Concurrently, liability insurance costs have risen rapidly.

1.4 AN APPROACH TO DAM SAFETY

An owner should be aware of and use both direct and indirect means of achieving dam safety. He can, of course, monitor and work on factors directly in his control (example, structural integrity), and these direct efforts are detailed below. However, the owner may also influence governmental policy and work for positive change in statutes and laws that affect dam safety (example, zoning laws). Such indirect influence by an owner could result in a significant

TABLE 1.1							
Loss of Life and Property Damage from Notable U.S. Dam Failures,							
1963-1983							

Name & Location of dam	Date of failure	Number of lives lost	Damages				
Mohegan Park, Conn.	Mar 1963	6	\$3 million				
Little Deer Creek, Utah	June 1963	1	Summer cabins damaged.				
Baldwin Hills, Calif.	Dec 1963	5	41 houses destroyed, 986 houses damaged. 100 apartment build- ings damaged.				
Swift, Mont.	June 1964	19	Unknown				
Lower Two Medicine, Mont	June 1968	9	Unknown				
Lee Lake, Mass	Mar 1968	2	6 houses destroyed. 20 houses damaged, 1 manufacturing plant damaged or destroyed.				
Buffalo Creek, West Va.	Feb 1972	125	546 houses destroyed, 538 houses damaged				
Lake "O" Hills, Ark	Apr 1972	1	Unknown				
Canyon Lake, S. Dak.	June 1972	33	Unable to assess damage because dam failure accom- panied damage caused by natural flooding.				
Bear Wallow, N.C.	Feb 1976	4	1 house destroyed				
Teton, Idaho	June 1976	11	771 houses destroyed, 3,002 houses damaged, 246 business damaged or destroyed.				
Laurel Run, Pa	July 1977	39	6 houses destroyed, 19 houses damaged.				
Sandy Run and 5 others, Pa	July 1977	5	Unknown				
Kelly Barnes, Ga	Nov 1979	39	9 houses, 18 house trailers and 2 college buildings destroyed; 6 houses, 5 college buildings damaged.				
Swimming Pool, N.Y	1979	4	Unknown				
About 20 dams in Conn	June 1982	0	Unknown				
Lawn Lake, Colo.	July 1982	3	18 bridges destroyed, 117 businesses and 108 houses damaged. Campgrounds, fish- eries, power plant damaged.				
DMAD, Utah	June 1983	1	Unknown				

Source: Graham, 1983.

contribution to the reduction of the likelihood and consequences of dam failure and thus, to overall community safety.

Liability, insurance coverage, and the roles of the Federal and state governments should all be well understood by an owner. Additionally, an owner should have a thorough knowledge of a dam's physical and social environment, including knowledge of natural and technological hazards that threaten the dam, understanding of the developing human settlement patterns around the dam, and understanding of other events that can lead to structural failure. These indirect means of achieving dam safety are covered in more detail in Chapters 2, 3 and 10.

Dam owners, can also influence the safety of dams in more direct ways. Owners can and should develop their own safety programs. These programs should include such important elements as inspection, monitoring instrumentation, through maintenance, emergency action planning, and proper operation. Such a program is directly related to a specific dam's structure and its immediate environment and depends on the owner's knowledge of the dam and how it works. Chapter 2 stresses the need for owner's knowledge about the dam, while Chapters 4 through 9 cover the development of a dam owner's safety program.

Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *

CHAPTER 2 INTRODUCTION TO DAMS

2.0 GENERAL

The purpose of a dam is to impound (store) water for any of several reasons, e.g., flood control, human water supply, irrigation, livestock water supply, energy generation, recreation, or pollution control. This manual primarily concentrates on earthen dams which constitute the majority of structures in place and under development.

2.1 THE WATERSHED SYSTEM

Water from rainfall or snowmelt naturally runs down hill into a stream valley and then into larger streams or other bodies of water. The "watershed system" refers to the drainage process through which rainfall or snowmelt is collected into a particular stream valley during natural runoff (directed by gravity). Dams constructed across such a valley then impound the runoff water and release it at a controlled rate. During periods of high runoff, water stored in the reservoir typically increases and overflow through a spillway may occur. During periods of low runoff, reservoir levels usually decrease. The dam owner can normally control the reservoir level to some degree by adjusting the quantity of water released by the dam. Downstream from the dam, the stream continues to exist, but because the quantity of water flowing is normally controlled, very high runoffs (floods) and very low runoffs (drought periods) are avoided

2.2 TYPES OF DAMS

Dams may be either man-made or exist because of natural phenomena, such as landslides or glacial deposition. The majority of dams are manmade structures normally constructed of earthfill or concrete. Naturally occurring lakes may also be modified by adding a spillway to provide safe, efficient release of excess water from the resulting reservoir.

Dam owners should be aware of the different types of dams, essential components of a dam, how the components function, and important physical conditions likely to affect a dam. This chapter discusses several of these factors.

Man-made dams may be classified according to the type of construction materials used, the methods used in construction, the slope or crosssection of the dam, the way the dam resists the forces of the water pressure behind it, the means used for controlling seepage, and occasionally, according the purpose of the dam.

- A. Component Parts The component parts of a typical dam are illustrated in Figure 2.1 Nearly all dams possess the features shown or variations of these features. Definitions of the terms are given in the glossary of this manual, Appendix C. The various dam components are discussed in greater detail later in this manual.
- B. Construction Materials The materials used for construction of dams include earth, rock, tailings from mining or milling, concrete, masonry, steel, timber, miscellaneous materials (such as plastic or rubber), and any combination of these materials.
 - Embankment Dams Embankment dams are the most common type of dam in use today. They have the general

Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *



The ability of an embankment dam to resist the hydrostatic pressure caused by reservoir water is primarily the result of the mass weight and strength of the materials from which the dam is made.

2. Concrete Dams - Concrete dams may be categorized into gravity and arch dams according to the designs used to resist the stress due to reservoir water pressure. A concrete gravity dam (shown in Figure 2.3) is the most common form of concrete dam. In it, the mass weight of the concrete and friction resist the reservoir water pressure. A buttress dam is a specific type of gravity dam in which the large mass of concrete is reduced, and the forces are diverted to the dam foundation through vertical or sloping buttresses. Gravity dams are constructed of nonreinforced vertical blocks of concrete with flexible seals in the joints between the blocks.

shape shown in Figure 2.2. Their side slopes typically have a grade of two to one (horizontal to vertical) or flatter. Their water retention capability is due to the low permeability of the entire mass (in the case of a homogeneous embankment) or of a zone of low-permeability material (in the case of a zoned embankment dam).

Materials used for embankment dams include natural soil or rock obtained from borrow areas or nearby quarries, or waste materials obtained from mining or milling operations. If the natural material has a high permeability, then a zone of very low permeability material must be included in the dam to retain water.

An embankment dam is termed an "earthfill" or "rockfill" dam depending on whether it is comprised mostly of compacted earth or mostly compacted or dumped pervious rock.



Figure 2.2 Embankment Dam



Figure 2.3 Concrete Gravity Dam



Figure 2.4 Concrete Arch Dam

Concrete arch dams are typically rather thin in crosssection (Figure 2.4). The reservoir water forces acting on an arch dam are carried laterally into the abutments. The shape of the arch may resemble a segment of a circle or an ellipse, and the arch may be curved in the vertical plane as well. Such dams are usually constructed of a series of thin vertical blocks that are keyed together; waterstops are provided between the blocks. Variations of arch dams include multi-arch dams in which more than one curved section is used and archgravity dams which combine some features of the two types of dams.

A recently developed method for constructing concrete gravity dams involves the use of a relatively weak concrete mix which is placed and compacted in a manner similar to that used for earthfill dams. This "roller compaction" construction technique has the advantage of both decreased cost and time. In addition, there are no joints where seepage could occur.

3. Other Types - Various construction techniques could be used in a single dam. For example, a dam could include an earth or rockfill embankment as well as a portion made of concrete. In such a case, the concrete section would normally contain the spillway or other outlet works.

Other construction materials such as timber or timber faced with steel sheeting have been used for dam construction in the past. In other cases, crib walls constructed of timber, steel, or steel mesh filled with soil or rock were used. In addition, many types of embankment and crib-wall dams employed a concrete or other impermeable facing to aid in water retention. Masonry dams (usually designed as gravity dams) were also popular about 100 years ago.

A recent and increasingly popular design for low-head dams (minimum height of water behind dam) involves the use of inflatable rubber or plastic materials anchored at the bottom by a concrete slab.

Some dams are constructed for special purposes such to divert water or permit construction of other facilities in river valleys. These dams are termed diversion dams and cofferdams, respectively.

2.3 WATER RETENTION ABILITY

Because the purpose of a dam is to retain water effectively and safely, the water retention ability of a dam is of prime importance. Water may pass from the reservoir to the downstream side of a dam by:

- Seeping through the dam
- Seeping through the abutments
- Seeping under the dam
- Overtopping the dam
- Passing through the outlet works
- Passing over an emergency spillway

The first three modes are considered undesirable, particularly if the seepage is not limited in areal extent or volume. Overtopping of an embankment dam is also very undesirable because the embankment material may be eroded away. Additionally, only a small number of concrete dams have been designed to be overtopped. Water normally leaves a dam by passing through an outlet works; it should pass over an emergency spillway only during periods of very high reservoir levels and high water inflow.

A. Seepage Through a Dam - All embankment dams and most concrete dams have some seepage through the dam. The earth or other material used to construct embankment dams has some permeability, and water under pressure from the reservoir will eventually seep through. However, it is important to control the quantity of seepage by using low permeability materials in the construction of the dam and by channelling and restricting the flow so that erosion of embankment materials does not occur.

Seepage through a concrete dam is usually minimal and is almost always through joints between blocks or through cracks or deteriorated concrete which may have developed. Maintenance of these joints and cracks is therefore essential. The seepage water should be collected and channelized, so that the quantity of water can be measured and erosion can be minimized.

B. Seepage Around a Dam -Seepage under a dam, through the dam foundation material, or around the ends of a dam through the abutment materials may become a serious problem if the flow is large or if it has sufficient velocity to cause erosion. Seepage under a dam also creates high hydrostatic uplift (pore water) pressures which have the effect of an upward pressure diminishing the mass weight of the dam, making the weight of a gravity dam less effective and therefore, the dam less stable.

Seepage through abutments or foundations can dissolve the constituents of certain rocks such as limestone, dolomite, or gypsum so that any cracks or joints in the rock become progressively larger and in turn allow more seepage. Abutment or foundation seepage may also result in "piping" internal erosion in which the flow of water is fast enough to erode away small particles of soil. This erosion progresses from the water exit point backward to the water entrance point. When that point is reached, water may then flow unrestricted resulting in even greater erosion and probable dam failure.

Obviously, it is not desirable to allow large unrestricted seepage to occur. To minimize this possibility, dams are constructed with internal impermeable barriers and internal drainage facilities such as drain pipes, filter systems, or other drainage systems such as toe drains, blanket drains, or chimney drains.

Flow through a dam foundation may be diminished by grouting known or suspected highly permeable material, constructing a cutoff wall or trench below a dam, or constructing an upstream impermeable blanket. Figure 2.5 illustrates a cutoff trench and an upstream blanket.

In summary, the overall water retention ability of a dam depends, on the permeability of the dam, the abutments, the foundation, and the efforts made to reduce that permeability or restrict the flow of water through those components.

2.4 RELEASE OF WATER

Intentional release of water, as stated earlier, is confined to water releases through outlet works or over emergency spillways. An outlet works commonly has a principal or mechanical spillway and a drawdown facility. Additionally, dams should be equipped with emergency spillways to manage extreme floods.

- A. Principal or Mechanical Spillway - The principal or mechanical spillway maintains the normal water level in the reservoir. Its function is to pass expected flood flows past the dam in a safe and nonerosive manner. It may consist of a simple metal or concrete pipe through the dam or a system of gates that discharge water over the top into a concrete spillway. Either method uses the overflow principle. When the reservoir reaches a certain level. water flows into a stand pipe or riser pipe or over a gate. Intake structures for spillways must have systems that prevent clogging due to accumulations of trash or debris.
- **B.** Drawdown Facility All dams should have some type of draw-down facility which can:
 - Quickly lower the water level if failure of the dam is imminent
 - Serve the operational purposes of the reservoir
 - Lower the water level for dam repairs
 - Purposely fluctuate the pool level to kill weeds and mosquitoes



Figure 2.5 Cutoff Trench and Upstream Blanket

The valve regulating the drawdown facility should be on the upstream end of the conduit to minimize the risk to the dam posed by a possible internal rupture of the pipe.

C. Emergency Spillway - As the name implies, an emergency spillway functions during emergency conditions to prevent overtopping of a dam. A typical emergency spillway is an excavated channel in earth or rock near one abutment of a dam. An emergency spillway should always discharge away from the toe of a dam, so that erosion of the toe will not occur. Furthermore, the spillway should be

constructed in such a manner that the spillway itself will not seriously erode when it is in use. Obviously, erosional failure of the spillway could be as catastrophic as failure of the dam itself. An emergency spillway should be sized to convey the socalled "design flood" the rare, large magnitude flood used to establish design criteria. The spillways of many existing dams are now considered undersized because standards for the design flood have increased over the years

CHAPTER 3 HAZARDS, RISKS, FAILURES

3.0 GENERAL

Dam failures are severe threats to life and property and are now being recorded and documented much more thoroughly than in the past. Recorded losses have been high. Life and property loss statistics fully justify the need for dam owners to better understand the risks to the public posed by dams, the kinds of hazards that promote these risks, and, generally, the reasons why dams fail. Improving a dam owner's understanding of realistic risks and possible reasons for failure is an essential first step in any overall effort to improve dam safety and preserve the benefits of dam ownership.

3.1 HAZARDS AS SOURCES OF RISK

Dam structure itself can be a source of risk due to possible construction flaws and weaknesses which develop because of aging The site immediately surrounding the structure may also increase structural risk if the dam is not positioned or anchored properly or if excessive reservoir seepage erodes the foundation or abutments.

The physical hazards which can cause dam failure are translated into high risks when people or property are threatened, and where the high risks to which Americans are exposed are exacerbated by a number of important factors. For instance, in most states, people are allowed to settle below dams in potential inundation zones, thereby compounding risk.

Natural hazards such as floods, earthquakes and landslides are also important contributors to risk. These natural phenomena are considered "hazards" because development has placed people and property in their way, since most natural phenomena existed long before mankind established patterns of settlement Failure to adjust to these events has been costly both to dam owners and the public in general

Human behavior is another element of dam failure risk; simple mistakes, operational mismanagement, unnecessary oversights or destructive intent can interact with other hazards to compound the possibility of failure. Thus, a broad range of natural and human hazards exist that, taken separately or in combination, increase the probability of dam failure and injury to people and property.

The following discussion of some of the most significant hazards that lead to public risk illustrates the interrelationship of events that can lead to dam failure.

3.1.1 Natural hazards that threaten dams - The most important natural hazards threatening dams include:

- Flooding from high precipitation
- Flooding from dam failure
- Earthquakes
- Landslides

Flooding from high precipitation -Of the natural events that can impact dams, floods are the most significant. A floodplain map of the U.S. (Figure 3.1) gives some idea of the major flood-prone areas Flash floods can happen anywhere -- even on small drainages -- but especially in the west Floods are the most frequent and costly natural events that lead to disaster in the U.S. Therefore, flood potentials must be included in risk analyses for dam failure. Dams are sometimes constructed to withstand a probable maximum flood (PMF) assumed to occur on the upstream watershed; this assumed event becomes the basis for the design of safety factors built into the dam (e.g., enhanced structural elements or spillway capacity) However, dams are often built in areas where estimates of the PMF are based on rather short precipitation and runoff records As a result, spillway capacity may be underestimated.

Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *



Flooding from dam failure - When a dam fails as a result of a flood, more people and property are generally placed in jeopardy than during natural floods. The Rapid City, South Dakota flood of 1970, which killed 242 people, caused a dam failure which added significantly to the loss of life When a natural flood occurs near a dam, the probability of failure and loss of life almost always increases.

The sudden surge of water generated by a dam failure usually exceeds the maximum flood expected naturally; dam failure inundation zones and 100-year floodplains are seldom congruent. The upper portion of an inundation zone almost always exceeds the 100-year floodplain considerably; therefore, residences and businesses that would escape natural flooding can be at extreme risk from dam failure flooding. Hence, it is important to make residents of those structures cognizant of the full risk to which they are exposed so that they can respond accordingly.

When one dam fails, the sudden surge of water may well be powerful enough to destroy another downstream dam, compounding the disaster. The potential for such a snowball effect is great, but the problem may seem remote to a dam owner who has not studied the potential impacts of upstream dams on his own structure. Upstream dams may seem too far away to be a real threat, but inundation zones and surge crests can extend many miles downstream -especially if the reservoir behind the collapsed dam held a large quantity of water.

Earthquakes - Earthquakes are also significant threats to dam safety. Both earthen and concrete dams can be damaged by ground motions caused by seismic activity. Cracks or seepage can develop, leading to immediate or delayed failure. Dams such as those in California, located near relatively young, active faults are of particular concern; but dams (especially older concrete and earthen structures) located where relatively low-scale seismic events may occur are also at risk. Areas of the U.S. where significant seismic risks exist are indicated in Figure 3.2. However, recent detailed seismic analyses have indicated a much broader area of

seismicity sufficient to damage dams; the seismic risk is essentially nationwide. Dam owners should be aware of the history of seismic activity in their locality and should develop their dam safety emergency procedures accordingly

Landslides - Rock slides and landslides may impact dams directly by blocking a spillway or by eroding and weakening abutments Indirectly, a large landslide into a reservoir behind a dam can cause an overflow wave which will exceed the capacity of the spillway and lead to failure. A land (or mud) slide can form a natural dam across a stream which can then be overtopped and fail. In turn, failure of such a natural dam could then cause the overtopping of a downstream dam or by itself cause damage equivalent to the failure of a human-made dam. In addition, large increases in sediment caused by such events can materially reduce storage capacity in reservoirs and thus increase a downstream dam's vulnerability to flooding. Sedimentation can also damage low-level gates and water outlets; damaged gates and outlets can lead to failure.





ZONE 4 Those areas within Zone 3 determined by the proximity to certain major fault systems.

Modified Mercatal Intensity Scale of 1931

3.1.2 Hazards from human activity - Human activity must also be considered when analyzing the risks posed by dams. By convention, classification of potential dam failure risk is based on the severity of potential impact, not on the structural safety of the dam. Thus, dams that may be of very sound construction are labeled "high hazard" if failure could result in catastrophic loss of life -- in other words, if people have settled in the potential inundation zone. The "high hazard" designation does not necessarily imply structural weakness or an unsafe dam. Lower classifications include "significant hazard" dams for which failure is estimated to result in large property loss, and "low hazard" dams for which failure is estimated to result in minimal property loss. The following is a recommended guide for classifying dam hazards (Table 3.1).

Risk may well increase through time because few governmental entities have found the means to limit settlement below dams. More high and significant hazard dams are continually being "created" as development occurs in potential inundation zones.

Many other complex aspects of settlement and development must be considered in assessing dam risks. Because of short-term revenue needs or other pressures, governments often permit development in hazardous areas despite long-term danger and the risk of high future disaster costs. Diversion of settlement away from potential inundation zones is a sure means of reducing risk, but is not always a policy suitable to the immediate needs of local government. Perhaps the ultimate irony for a dam owner is to have developed

TABLE 3.1

HAZARD POTENIIAL CLASSIFICATION FOR DAMS

Category	Urban Development	Economic Loss
Low	No permanent structures for human habitation	Minimal (Undeveloped to occasional structures or agriculture).
Significant	No urban development and a small number of habitable structures	Appreciable (Notable agriculture, industry)
High	Urban development with more than a small number of habit- able structures.	Excessive (Extensive com- munity, industry or agriculture)

(Source: U.S. Army corps of Engineers 1982b)

and implemented a safety program and then to have settlement permitted in the potential inundation zone so that the owner's liability increases.

Two extremes of human purpose the will to destroy through war or terrorism and the urge to develop and to construct - can both result in public risks. Dams have proven to be attractive wartime targets, and they may be tempting to terrorists. On the other hand, a terrorist's advantage from holding the public at risk may well be illusory; the deliberate destruction of a dam is not at all easy to bring about. Yet the possibility exists that such an act could take place, and it should not be discounted by the dam owner.

All sorts of other human behavior should be included in risk analyses; vandalism for example cannot be excluded and is in fact, a problem faced by many dam owners. Vegetated surfaces of a dam embankment, mechanical equipment, manhole covers and rock riprap are particularly susceptible to damage by people. Every precaution should be taken to limit access to a dam by unauthorized persons and vehicles.

Dirt bikes (motorcycles) and fourwheel drive vehicles, in particular, can severely degrade the vegetation on embankments. Worn areas lead to erosion and more serious problems.

Mechanical equipment and associated control mechanisms should be protected from purposeful or inadvertent tampering Buildings housing mechanical equipment should be sturdy. have protected windows, heavy duty doors, and should be secured with deadbolt locks or padlocks. Detachable controls, such as handles and wheels, should be removed when not in use and stored inside the padlocked building. Other controls should be secured with locks and heavy chains where possible. Manhole covers are often removed and sometimes thrown into reservoirs or spillways by vandals

Rock used as riprap around dams is sometimes thrown into the reservoirs, spillways, stilling basins, pipe spillway risers, and elsewhere Riprap is often displaced by fishermen to form benches. The best way to prevent this abuse is to use rock too large and heavy to move easily or to slush grout the riprap Otherwise, the rock must be regularly replenished and other damages repaired. Regular visual inspection can easily detect such human impacts.

Owners should be aware of their responsibility for the safety of people using their facility even though their entry may not be authorized "No Trespassing" signs should be posted, and fences and warning signs should be erected around dangerous areas. As discussed in Chapter 10, liability insurance can be purchased to protect the owner in the event of accidents.

3.2 SITE-SPECIFIC STRUCTURAL RISK

Developing site-specific risk analyses involves consideration of a number of hazards. Such analyses are helpful in stimulating better awareness, planning and design In some cases dam structure analyses are quantitatively based, and precise conclusions about engineering and design can be made. Probabilistic analyses can also be important and useful Still, exact quantitative and probabilistic tools are not yet applicable in many situations and do not fully supplement or replace qualitative analyses - informed perception and judgment of the risks. Judgment and engineering experience should play an important role in reaching useful conclusions in any site-specific analysis of structural risk.

As mentioned in Chapter 2, structural risks tend to result from design and construction problems related to the dam materials, construction practice and hydrology. The complexity of the hazard is such that structural design and causes of dam failure are significant areas of research in engineering. Indeed better design criteria have been developed and safer dams are being built, but there is no basis for complacency. Dams continue to age, people continue to move into inundation zones and enough hazards exist that the net risk to the public will remain high for many years.

3.3 SOURCES OF DAM FAILURE

There are many complex reasons -both structural and non-structural -for dam failure. Many sources of failure can be traced to decisions made during the design and construction process and to inadequate maintenance or operational mismanagement. Failures have also resulted from the natural hazards already mentioned -large scale flooding and earthquake movement. However, from the perspective of the owner, the structure of a dam is the starting point for thorough understanding of the potentials for failure.

The International Commission of Large Dams (ICOLD) conducted a study of dam failures and accidents. Figures 3.3 through 3.5 summarize the data (which pertain only to dams more than 15 feet high and include only failures resulting in water releases downstream).

3.3.1 Three categories of structural failure - Three categories of structural failure alluded to in Chapter 2 are:

- Overtopping by flood
- Foundation defects
- Piping

Overtopping may develop from many sources, but often evolves from inadequate spillway design. Alternatively even an adequate spillway may become clogged with debris. In either situation, water pours over other parts of the dam, such as abutments or the dam toe and erosion and failure follow.

Concrete dams are more susceptible to foundation failure than overtopping whereas earthfill dams suffer from seepage and piping. However, when overtopping and foundation failures are lumped together, they represent 82 percent of the failures studied by the ICOLD.

Figure 3.3 shows the relative importance of these three main categories of failure. Overall, these three events have about the same rate of incidence. A more specific analysis of the potential sources of failure has to take into account types of dams. Similarly, the characteristics of the type of dam being monitored will point to problems requiring more careful attention by the owner when developing a safety program.



Figure 3.3 Cause of failure. Source: ICOLD (1973).



Figure 3.4 Age at failure. Source: ICOLD (1973).

3.3.2 Failures by dam type - Figure 3.4 shows the relation between dams built and those that failed for various dam types from 1900 to 1969. Gravity dams appear the safest, followed by arch and fill dams. Buttress dams have the poorest record but are also the ones used least.

Embankment or Earthfill Dams -The major reason for failure of fill or embankment dams was piping or seepage (38 percent; Figure 3.3). Other hydrologic failures were significant, including overtopping and erosion from water flows. All earthen dams exhibit some seepage; however, as discussed earlier, this seepage can and must be controlled in velocity and amount. Seepage occurs through the structure and, if uncontrolled, can erode material from the downstream slope or foundation backward toward the upstream slope. This "piping" phenomenon can lead to a complete failure of the structure. Piping action can be recognized by an increased seepage flow rate, the discharge of muddy or discolored water below the dam, sinkholes on or near the embankment, and a whirlpool in the reservoir.

Earth dams are particularly susceptible to hydrologic failure since most sediments erode at relatively low waterflow velocities Hydrologic failures result from the uncontrolled flow of water over the dam, around the dam, adjacent to the dam, and the erosive action of water on the dam's foundation. Once erosion has begun during overtopping, it is almost impossible to stop. In a very special case, a well-vegetated earth embankment may withstand limited overtopping if water flows over the top and down the face as an evenly distributed sheet and does not become concentrated in a single channel Table 3.2 lists examples of earthen dam failures caused by some of these conditions.

TABLE 3.2 EXAMPLE OF EARTHEN DAM FAILURES

SOUTHFORK, PENNSYLVANIA

The famous Johnstown disaster, caused by the failure of the South Fork Dam in 1889 in which 2,209 people were killed, is an example of the overtopping of an earthen dam. Heavy rainfall in the upper drainage basin of the dam filled the reservoir and caused overtopping. It was later calculated that if a spillway had been built according to specifications and if the original outlet pipes had been available for full capacity discharge, there would have been no overtopping.

TEION DAM, IDAHO

The Teton Dam failure in 1976 was attributed to (1) internal erosion (piping) of the core of the dam deep in the right foundation key trench, with the eroded soil particles finding exits through channels in and along the interface of the dam with the highly pervious abutment rock and talus to points at the right groin of the dam; (2) destruction of the exit avenues and their removal by the outrush of reservoir water; (3) the existence of openings through inadequately sealed rock joints which may have developed through cracks in the core zone in the key trench; (4) the development of piping through the main body of the dam that quickly led to complete failure; and (5) the design of the dam did not adequately take into account the foundation conditions and the characteristics of the soil used for filling the key trench.

BALDWIN HILLS AND ST FRANCES DAMS, CALIFORNIA

The Baldwin Hills Dam failed in 1963 following displacement of its foundation. Foundation problems were ultimately traced to seismic activity along nearby faults. The failure of the large St. Francis Dam (part of the water supply system for Los Angeles) in 1928 was also attributed to a variety of problems related to foundation pressures, seepage around the foundation and operation.

(Jansen, 1980).

TABLE 3.3 EXAMPLES OF CONCRETE DAM FAILURES

AUSTIN, PENNSYLVANIA

An example of a foundation problem can be found in the failure of the Austin, Pennsylvania Dam in September, 1911. Evidently, the reservoir was filled before the concrete had set sufficiently. Eventual failure near the base occurred because of weakness in the foundation or in the bond between the foundation and the concrete.

WALNUT GROVE, ARIZONA

In 1890, the Walnut Grove dam on the Hassayompa River failed due to overtopping, killing about 150 people. The failure was blamed on inadequate capacity of the spillway and poor construction and workmanship. A spillway 6 \times 26 feet had been blasted out of rock on one abutment, but with a drainage area above the dam site of about 500 square miles, the spillway could not provide nearly enough discharge capacity.

(Jansen, 1980)

Concrete Dams - Failure of concrete dams is primarily associated with foundation problems. Overtopping is also a significant cause again primarily when spillways are built with inadequate capacity. Other causes include failure to let concrete set properly, and earthquakes. The examples summarized in Table 3.3 illustrate typical foundation problems leading to dam failure.

3.3.3 Age and its relation to failure-Figure 3.5 illustrates cause of failure as a function of a dam's age at the time of failure. Foundation failures occurred relatively early, while other causes generally took much longer to materialize. Thus, it is not surprising that a very large percentage of all dam failures occur during initial filling, since this is when design or construction flaws, or latent site defects, appear.

In summary, this outline of the hazards, risks, and failures associated with dams is provided so that owners will have an overview of the problem with which they must deal. Each aspect of a safety program should be visualized by the dam owner in terms related to the most probable sources of failure for a particular dam.



Figure 3.5 Dam types (Western Europe and USA, 1900-1969). Source: ICOLD (1979).

CHAPTER 4 DEVELOPING A SAFETY PROGRAM

4.0 OBJECTIVES OF A SAFETY PROGRAM

The significance of the dam failure problem points out the need for a dam safety program. Such a program should be based on an evaluation to determine a dam's structural and operational safety. The evaluation should identify problems and recommend either remedial repairs, operational restrictions and modifications, or further analyses and studies to determine solutions to the problems.

A safety program comprises several components addressing the spectrum of possible actions to be taken over the short and long term. These actions include:

- Assessing the condition of the dam and its components
- Conducting preliminary and detailed inspections
- Identifying repairs and continuing maintenance needs
- Establishing periodic and continuous monitoring capabilities over the long-term
- Establishing an emergency action plan to help minimize adverse impacts should the dam fail
- Establishing operations procedures which recognize dam failure hazards and risks
- Documenting the safety program so that the information established is available at times of need and can be readily updated

Development of a safety program involves a phased process beginning with collection and review of existing information, proceeding to detailed inspections and analyses, and culminating with formal documentation. Much of the preliminary work can be accomplished by the dam owner with the assistance of state and local public agencies. However, depending upon the number and seriousness of problems identified by the initial assessment, professional assistance by qualified engineers and contractors may be required.

4.1 GUIDELINES FOR ASSESSING EXISTING CONDITIONS

The guidelines for assessing existing conditions are a sequence of steps that will enable a dam owner to secure the information needed to determine the need for subsequent detailed investigations, repairs and maintenance. The steps include:

- Reviewing existing data
- Visiting the site
- Inspecting the dam
- Assessing significance of observed conditions
- Deciding what to do next

Reviewing Existing Data - The important first step is to collect and review available information on the dam - its design, construction, and operation. A first requirement is a good map of the site. Maps of the watershed and the downstream channel reaches are also valuable. The design of the dam and its appurtenant structures should be reviewed to assess its actual performance compared to that intended. Engineering records originating during construction should be reviewed to determine if structures were constructed as designed. Records of subsequent construction modifications should be collected, as well as operation records which document the performance of the dam and reservoir. Any previously prepared emergency action plan should be reviewed to determine if it is up to date and workable. All these records should be incorporated into a notebook or file: they are most important in establishing a safety program and its supporting documentation. Chapters 5 through Chapter 10 provide information to aid the development of such documentation. It may be, however, that no records exist. In this instance, a detailed examination of the structure is appropriate.

Visiting the Dam Site - The next step is to visit the site. Undoubtedly, the dam site is well known and has been visited numerous times, but in this visit, there are some particular things to look for. A fresh look at the

dam structure and its surroundings from the point of view of its potential hazard is required.

Inspecting the Dam - It will be necessary to take a detailed and systematic look at all components of the dam and reservoir system. The description of the site's components (Chapter 2) should aid this inspection. The descriptions are generalized, and it must be recognized that dams and their components come in various shapes and sizes and differ greatly in detail. Features to inspect include:

- Access roads and ways
- Upstream slope
- Crest
- Downstream slope
- Left and right abutments
- Spillways
- Outlets and drains
- Reservoir area (exposed and submerged)

Conditions to look for range from obvious deterioration, cracks and slumps, and boiling seepage to notso-obvious internal corrosion and weathering, settlement, and foundation rock deterioration and/or dissolution. A dam may look stable but be susceptible to failure resulting from gradual deterioration of its internal structure. Regular and very detailed inspections (Chapter 5) and follow-up monitoring (Chapter 6) and maintenance (Chapter 7) are needed to assure the maximum level of safety.

Assessing Significance of Observed Conditions - Chapter 5 presents detailed information on conducting inspections and assessing the significance of observed conditions. Typically, eroded areas, seepage, slides, and outflow draw the most attention.

Deciding What Io Do Next-These initial activities will have provided a good start to establishing a dam safety program. Available information on design and construction of the dam and later structural modifications provides perspective on its existing condition relative to that intended. If no documentation exists, then development of equivalent detail should be a first priority.

Inspection and documentation assistance is available from several sources including state and local agencies responsible for dam safety. Professional engineering consultants can also provide detailed inspections, testing, analyses, and documentation (Chapter 10).

4.2 PROCEDURAL GUIDELINES -A SOURCEBOOK

This chapter provides an overview of how to establish a safety program. Subsequent chapters detail technical and procedural steps of the various safety program components. They include:

- Detailed Inspection Guidelines (Chapter 5)
- Monitoring and Instrumentation Guidelines (Chapter 6)
- Maintenance Guidelines (Chapter 7)
- Emergency Action Guidelines (Chapter 8)
- Operations Guidelines (Chapter 9)

These program components can be visualized as a sequence of initial and continuing activities to insure dam safety. They are illustrated in Figure 4.1.

Again, the program of inspection for both the initial and continuing safety evaluations establishes the condition of the dam and provides the base of information necessary for specific actions involving repair, operation, and monitoring. The flow chart illustrates the cyclical nature of the program and the need for continuing vigilance. Emergency action can hopefully be avoided, but a well thought out plan of action (Chapter 8) in case of imminent or actual failure can greatly reduce damage and loss of life.

4.3 DOCUMENTING THE SAFETY PROGRAM

It is important to document a safety program in order to make maximum, reliable use of information about the dam. The procedural guidelines that follow can serve as an outline or table of contents for a safety program report. The operations plan (Chapter 9) presents a detailed outline of the information that should be included in the documentation. The chapters which follow suggest forms for inspections, monitoring, etc. which can be used to record information. It is helpful to maintain all the material in a single notebook or file so that it can be updated and available when needed Duplicate copies of much of the file should be stored at a different location from the original.



Figure 4.1 Procedural Guidelines for A Dam Safety Program

Table 5.1 lists features to be inspected dam and the problems or deficiencie looked for. The specific sections	TABLE 5.1 INSPECTION GUIDELINES DIRECTORY												
manual in which the various features a cussed are also indicated.	ire ais-	RROWS			NOIT		TIVITY		TER		L	z	Ð
	GNMEN'	MAL BU	ACKS	aRUS	FERIORA	NOIS	MAN AC	NKAGE	м уаа	PAGE	TLEMEN	JETATIO	ATHERD
INSPECI FOR	ALI	NA	CR	DEI	DE	ERC	Н	LEA	MU	SEE	SET & S	VEC	ME.
FEATURE	a second and second and second and		and a second second second				88444-1999-1999-1999-1999-1999-1999-1999					a na sana na s	
EMBANKMENT DAM (5.3)													
Upstream Slope	X	<u> </u>	x			<u> </u>	<u> </u>						
Downstream Slope	×	<u> </u>	<u> </u>			<u> </u>	x	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	_ <u>-</u>
Abutments	ļ	x	x					<u>x</u>		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	x	
Crest	x	_ X				<u> </u>			·		x	<u> </u>	
Seepage Areas			<u> </u>					<u>-x</u> -	<u> </u>	<u> </u>		<u> </u>	
Internal Drainage	ļ							<u> </u>	<u> </u>				
Relief Drains	x		x		X			x	X			·	
CONCRETE DAM (5.4)	A MALANCE & MALAN				r announce data a sugara data		v 81ritit v Vetterlaure Ve						
Upstream Face			X		X						— x —		*
Downstream Face			X					-×-		<u>×</u>	- X		x
Abutments			X		- X			X		X	—X		—x
Crests	X		X		X						x		— x
SPILLWAYS (5.5)													-
Approach Channel	-			X									
Stilling Basin						<u> </u>							
Discharge Channel				- <u>X</u> -							X.	X	
Control Features					- X								
Erosion Protection			V			v					X		
Side Slopes			1					× –	-		Ť	X	
INLETS, OUTLETS										**		-	
	\mathbf{v}			¥	4	ľ		J					
Stilling Desig	1			-	1			1				Å	
Discharge Channel			¥	¥						in the second	annafailte 1004 a scenar ann ann a	46.00	IC-HEIMEL
Tasshaaka			1	Y							I	X	
Emergency Systems					x		x						-
GENERAL AREAS (5.7)													
Reservoir Surface													
Shoreline	ļ							_ _			x	- <u>x</u>	
Mechanical Systems													
Electrical Systems	ļ				X								
Upstream Watershed			_				- x						
Downstream Flood-	I						-x				<u> </u>]

Plains

*

CHAPTER 5 INSPECTION GUIDELINES

5.0 INTRODUCTION

An effective inspection program is essential for identifying problems and providing safe maintenance of a dam. An inspection program should involve three types of inspections: (1) periodic technical inspections; (2) periodic maintenance inspections, and (3) informal observations by project personnel as they operate the dam. Technical inspections must be performed by specialists familiar with the design and construction of dams and should include assessments of structure safety. Maintenance inspections are performed more frequently than technical inspections in order to detect at an early stage any developments which may be detrimental to the dam. They involve assessing operational capability as well as structural stability. The third type of inspection is actually a continuing effort by on-site project personnel (dam tenders, powerhouse operators, maintenance personnel) performed in the course of their normal duties. Education of new personnel is required to assure the continued effectiveness of these inspections.

Visual inspection performed on a regular basis is one of the most economical means a dam owner can use to assure the safety and long life of a dam and its immediate environment. Visual inspection is a straightforward procedure that can be used by any properly trained person to make a reasonably accurate assessment of a dam's condition. The inspection involves careful examination of the surface and all parts of the structure, including its adjacent environment The equipment required is not expensive, and the inspection usually can be completed in less than one day.

5.4 INSPECTION GUIDELINES

Table 5.1 lists dam components and conditions which may be observed during an inspection. The table summarizes the detailed guidelines presented in subsequent sections of this chapter.

Section 5.3 Embankment dams

Section 5.4 Concrete dams

Section 5.5 Spillways

Section 5.6 Inlets, outlets and drains Section 5.7 Other areas

At the end of the chapter, diagrams and tabular listings of the guidelines (Figures 5.3 through 5.6) are presented for the various dam components. The guideline tables provide a quick reference to be used in assessing observed conditions, their probable cause and possible consequences, and remedial actions. The guidelines also point out the HAZARDOUS problems where evaluation by an ENGINEER is required.

The dam owner, by applying the maximum prudent effort, can identify any changes in previously noted conditions that may indicate a safety problem. Quick corrective action to conditions requiring attention will promote the safety and extend the useful life of the dam while possibly preventing costly future repairs.

5.2 ORGANIZING FOR INSPECTION

All inspections should be organized and systematic, and inspectors should use equipment appropriate for the task, record observations accurately, and survey the structure and site comprehensively.

Equipment - Equipment useful for inspections is listed in Table 5.2.

Recording Inspection Observations - An accurate and detailed description of conditions observed during each inspection will enable meaningful comparison of conditions observed at different times. All measurements and observed details required to get an accurate picture of a dam's current condition and possible problems should be recorded. This information has three elements:

TABLE 5.2

Inspection Equipment and Its Use

Inspection Checklist - Serves as a reminder of all important conditions to be examined.

Notebook and Pencil - Should be on hand so that observations can be written down at the time they are made, thus reducing mistakes and avoiding the need to return to the site to refresh the inspector's memory.

Tape Recorder - Can be effective in making a record of field observations.

Camera - Can be used to provide photographs of observed field conditions. Photographs taken from the same vantage points can also be valuable in comparing past and present conditions.

Hand Level - May be needed to accurately locate areas of interest and to determine embankment heights and slope.

Probe - Provides information on conditions below the surface, such as the depth and softness of a saturated area.

Hard Hat - Should be used when inspecting large outlets or working in construction areas.

Pocket Tape - Provides accurate dimensional measurements so that meaningful comparisons can be made of movements.

Flashlight - May be needed to inspect the interior of an outlet in a small dam.

Shovel - Useful in clearing drain outfalls, removing debris, and locating monitoring points.

Rock Hammer - Can be used to check questionable-looking riprap or concrete for soundness. Care must be taken not to break through thin spots or cause unnecessary damage.

Bonker - Is used to determine the condition of support material behind concrete or asphalt faced dams by firmly tapping the surface of the facing material. Concrete fully supported by fill material produces a "click" or "bink" sound, while facing material over a void or hole produces a "clonk" or "bonk" sound. A bonker can be made of 1 1/4-inch hard wood dowel with a metal tip firmly fixed to the tapping end.

Binoculars - Are useful for inspecting limited access areas, especially on concrete dams.

Volume Container and Timer - Are used to make accurate measurements of the rate of leakage. Various container sizes may be required, depending on the flow rates.

Stakes and Flagging Tape - Are used to mark areas requiring future attention and to stake the limits of existing conditions, such as cracks and wet areas, for future comparison.

Watertight Boots - Are recommended for inspecting areas of the site where standing water is present.

Bug Repellent - Is recommended during warm weather. Biting bugs can reduce the efficiency and effectiveness of the inspector.

First Aid Kit - Is particularly recommended for inspections in areas where rattlesnakes or other poisonous snakes might be present.

- Location The location of any questionable area or condition must be accurately described so that the area or condition can be evaluated for changes over time or reexamined by experts Photographs can be helpful in this regard. The location along the dam, as well as above the toe or below the crest, should be established and recorded. Problems in the outlet or spillway should be similarly located.
- Extent or Area The length, width, and depth or height of any suspected problem area should be determined.
- Descriptive Detail A brief yet detailed description of an anomalous condition should be given Some items to include are:
 - Quantity of drain outflows
 - Quantity of seepage from point and area sources
 - Color or quantity of sediment in water
 - Depth of deterioration in concrete
 - Length, displacement, and depth of cracks
 - Extent of moist, wet, or saturated areas
 - Adequacy of protective cover
 - Adequacy of surface drainage
 - Steepness or configuration of slopes
 - Apparent deterioration rate
 - Changes in conditions

Coverage - An inspection is conducted by walking along and over a dam as many times as is required to observe the entire structure. From any given location, a person can usually gain a detailed view for 10 to 30 feet in each direction, depending upon the smoothness of the surface or the type of material on the surface, (i.e., grass, concrete, riprap, brush). On the downstream slope a zigzag inspection path should be used to assure that any cracking is detected.

Sequence - A sequence of inspection insuring systematic coverage of an entire site is:

- Upstream slope
- Crest
- Downstream slope
- Seepage areas
- Outlet
- Spillway

Following a consistent sequence lessens the chance of an important condition being overlooked Reporting inspection results in the same sequence is recommended to ensure consistent records. Inspection forms are included in Appendix A. The forms should be supplemented with additional details specific to a given dam.

Record Keeping - A dated report should be filled out for each inspection, and should be filed along with any photographs taken (which should also be dated). In addition to inspection observations, monitoring measurements and weather conditions (especially recent rains, extended dry spells and snow cover) should also be systematically recorded and included in the inspection record.

Immediately following an inspection, observations should be compared with previous records to see if there are any trends that may indicate developing problems. If a questionable change or trend is noted, and failure is not imminent, a dam owner should consult a professional engineer experienced in dam safety. Quick reaction to questionable conditions will ensure the safety and long life of a dam and possibly prevent costly repairs.

Crucial Inspection Times - There are at least five special times when an inspection is recommended regardless of the regular schedule.

- 1. Prior to a predicted major rainstorm or heavy snow melt; check spillway, outlet channel, and riprap.
- 2 During or after a severe rainstorm; check spillway, outlet channel, and riprap,
- 3 During or following a severe windstorm; check riprap performance during the storm (if possible) and again after the storm has subsided,
- 4. Following an earthquake in the area; make a complete inspection immediately after the event and weekly inspections for the next several months to detect any delayed effects,
- 5. During and immediately after the first reservoir filling; schedule a regular program of frequent complete inspections during the period a reservoir is first being filled to assure that design and site conditions are as predicted. In most states, an inspection and filling

schedule are prescribed by the design engineer and approved by the state engineer.

5.3 EMBANKMENT DAMS AND STRUCTURES

Embankment dams constitute the majority of structures in place in the U.S. Table 5.1 presents a general directory of embankment features to be inspected and the conditions to look for. The major features include:

- Upstream slope
- Downstream slope
- Crest
- Seepage areas

Many of the principles and guidelines presented in this section are also applicable to concrete structures.

5.3.1 Upstream Slope - Typically, major problems encountered on an upstream slope are:

- Cracks
- Slides
- Cave-ins or sink holes
- Severe erosion

The first three conditions may indicate serious problems within the embankment. Severe erosion obviously can weaken the structure. An upstream slope should receive a close inspection because riprap and high water levels can hide problems. (When walking on riprap, caution should be used to avoid personal injury.) When a reservoir is emptied, the exposed slope should be thoroughly inspected for settlement areas, rodent activity, sink holes, or slides. Also, the reservoir basin (bottom of the reservoir) should be inspected for cave-ins or sink holes.

Again, most importantly, a crisscross path should be used when inspecting the slope so that cracks and slides can be easily identified. In many instances, sighting along the water line alignment will indicate a change in the uniformity of the slope; an inspector should stand at one end of the dam and sight along the water line checking for straightness and uniformity. If a crack is seen, the crest and downstream slope in its immediate area should be carefully inspected.

Cracks indicate possible foundation movement, embankment failure, or a surface slide. Locating them can be difficult. Cracks can be less than an inch in width, but still several feet deep. Cracks 1 foot deep usually are not produced by drying and usually are cause for concern. A line of recently dislodged riprap on an upstream slope could indicate a crack below the riprap.

Slides can be almost as difficult to detect as cracks. When a dam is constructed the slopes may not be uniformly graded. Familiarity with the slope configuration at the end of construction can help identify subsequent slope movements. Moreover, the appearance of slides may be subtle; for example, they may produce only about 2 feet of settlement or bulging in a distance of 100 feet or more, yet this would still be a significant amount of settlement. Dated photographs are particularly helpful in detecting such changes.

Sink holes or cave-ins result from internal erosion of the dam – a very serious condition for earthen embankments. The internal erosion, or piping, may be reflected by turbid seepage water on exit. Surface soil materials may be eroded by wave action, rain runoff, and burrow activities. If allowed to continue, the embankment thickness can be reduced and the structure weakened.

5.3.2 Downstream Slope - A downstream slope should be inspected carefully because it is the area where evidence of developing problems appears most frequently. To assure adequate inspection, this area should be kept free from obscuring weeds, brush, or trees.

When cracks, slides or seepage are noted in the downstream slope, the designated dam safety authorities should be notified immediately.

On the downstream slope, some of the more threatening conditions that could be identified are:

- Cracks
- Slides
- Seepage

Cracks can indicate settlement, drying and shrinkage, or the development of a slide. Whatever the cause, cracks should be monitored and changes in length and width noted. Drying cracks may appear and disappear seasonally and normally will not show vertical displacement as will settlement cracks or slide cracks.

Slides require immediate detailed evaluation. Early warning signs include a bulge in the embankment near the toe of a dam or vertical dis-

placement in the upper portion of an embankment

Seepage is discussed separately below.

If any of these three conditions are seen or suspected, the state engineer's office should be notified immediately. If a downstream slope is covered with heavy brush or vegetation, a more concerted search must be made.

5.3.3 Crest - A dam's crest usually provides the primary access for inspection and maintenance. Because surface water will pond on a crest unless that surface is well maintained, this part of a dam usually requires periodic regrading. However, problems found on the crest should not be simply graded over or covered up. When a questionable condition is found, the state's dam safety engineers should be notified immediately.

On the crest, some of the more threatening conditions that may be identified are:

- Longitudinal cracking
- Transverse cracking
- Misalignment

Longitudinal cracking can indicate localized instability, differential settlement, and/or movement between adjacent sections of the embankment. Longitudinal cracking is typically characterized by a single crack or a close, parallel system of cracks along the crest in a direction more or less parallel to the axis of the dam. These cracks, which are usually continuous over their length and are usually greater than 1 foot deep, can be differentiated from drying cracks which are usually intermittent, erratic in pattern, shallow, very narrow, and numerous.

Longitudinal cracking may precede vertical displacement as a dam attempts to adjust to a position of greater stability. Vertical displacements on the crest are usually accompanied by displacements on the upstream or downstream face of a dam.

Transverse cracking can indicate differential settlement or movement between adjacent segments of a dam. Transverse cracking is usually a single crack or a close, parallel system of cracks which extend across the crest in a direction more or less perpendicular to the length of a dam. This type of cracking is usually greater than 1 foot in depth.

Transverse cracking poses a definite threat to the safety and integrity of a dam. If a crack should progress to a point below the reservoir water surface elevation, seepage could progress along the crack and through the embankment causing severe erosion and if not corrected, leading to failure of the dam.

Misalignment can indicate relative movement between adjacent portions of a dam - generally in directions perpendicular to the axis of the dam. Excessive settlement of dam material and/or the foundation can also cause misalignment. Most problems are usually detectable during close inspection. Misalignment may, however, only be detectable by viewing a dam from either abutment. If on close inspection, the crest appears to be straight for the length of the structure, alignment can be further checked by standing away from the dam on either abutment and sighting along the upstream and downstream edges of the crest. On curved dams, alignment can be checked by standing at either end of a short segment of the dam and sighting along the crest's upstream and downstream edges, noting any curvature or misalignment in that section.

5.3.4 Seepage areas - As discussed previously, although all dams have some seepage, seepage in any area on or near a dam can be dangerous, and all seepage should be treated as a potential problem. Wet areas downstream from dams are not usually natural springs, but seepage areas. Seepage must be controlled in both velocity and quantity. High velocity flows through a dam can cause progressive erosion and, ultimately, failure. Saturated areas of an embankment or abutment can move in massive slides and thus also lead to failure.

Seepage can emerge anywhere on the downstream face of a dam, beyond the toe, or on the downstream abutments at elevations below normal reservoir levels. A potentially dangerous condition exists when seepage appears on the downstream face above the toe of a dam. Seepage on the downstream slope can cause a slide or failure of the dam by internal erosion (piping). Evidence of seepage may vary from a soft, wet area to a flowing spring, and may appear initially as only an area where vegetation is lush and dark green in color. Cattails, reeds, mosses, and other marsh vegetation often become established in seepage areas. Downstream abutment areas should always be inspected closely for signs of seepage, as should the area of contact between an embankment and a conduit spillway, drain, or other appurtenant structures and outlets. Slides in the embankment or an abutment may be the result of seepage causing soil saturation and high pore pressures.

Since seepage can be present but not readily visible, an intensive search should be made of all downstream areas where seepage water might emerge. Even in short grass cover, seepage may not be visible and must be walked on to be found. Ideally, an inspection for seepage should be made when a reservoir is full

5.4 CONCRETE DAMS AND STRUCTURES

From a safety standpoint, the principal advantage of concrete dams over earth dams is their relative freedom from failure by erosion during overtopping as well as from embankment slides and piping failures.

Although concrete dams comprise a minority of all dams, they are commonly of greater height and storage capacity than earth structures. Thus, they often represent a potentially greater hazard to life and property. It is important that concrete dam owners be aware of the principal modes of failure of such dams and that they be able to discern between conditions which threaten the safety of the dam and those which merely indicate a need for maintenance.

Concrete dams fail for reasons that are significantly different from earth dams. These include:

- Structural cracks
- Foundation and abutment weakness
- Deterioration due to alkaliaggregate reaction

Should any of these conditions be discovered during inspection, an owner should obtain engineering assistance immediately.

Structural cracks occur when portions of the dam are overstressed and are the result of inadequate design, poor construction or faulty materials. Structural cracks are often irregular, may run at an angle to the major axes of the dam and may exhibit abrupt changes in direction. These cracks can also have noticeable radial, transverse, or vertical displacement.

Concrete dams transfer a substantial load to the abutments and foundation. Although the concrete of a dam may endure, the natural abutments or foundation may crack, crumble, or move in a massive slide. If this occurs, support for the dam is lost, and it fails. Impending failure of the foundation or abutments may be difficult to detect because initial movements are often very small.

Severe deterioration can result from a chemical reaction between alkali present in cements and certain forms of silica present in some aggregates. This chemical reaction produces byproducts of silica gels which cause expansion and loss of strength within concrete. Alkali reaction is characterized by certain observable conditions such as cracking (usually a random pattern on a fairly large scale), and by excessive internal and overall expansion. Additional indications include the presence of a gelatinous exudation or whitish amorphous deposits on the surface. and a chalky appearance of freshly fractured concrete.

The alkali-aggregate reaction takes place in the presence of water. Surfaces exposed to the elements or dampened by seepage will deteriorate most rapidly. Once suspected, the condition can be confirmed by a series of tests performed on core samples drilled from a dam. Although the deterioration is gradual, alkaliaggregate reaction cannot be economically corrected by any means now known. Continued deterioration may require total replacement of a structure.

Inspection of a concrete dam is similar to that of an earth dam. However, the following additional items should be considered:

- Access and safety
- Monitoring
- Outlet system
- Cracks at construction and expansion joints
- Shrinkage cracks
- Deterioration due to spalling
- Minor leakage

Access and safety are important because the faces of concrete dams are often nearly vertical, and sites are

commonly steep-walled rock canyons. Access to the downstream face, toe area, and abutments of such dams may be difficult and require special safety equipment such as safety ropes, or a boatswain's chair. Concrete dams pose a special problem for the dam owner because of the difficulty in gaining close access to the steep surfaces. Regular inspection with a pair of powerful binoculars can initially identify areas where change is occurring. When these changes are noted, a detailed close up inspection should be conducted. Close inspection of the upstream face may also require a boatswain's chair or a boat.

Monitoring helps detect structural problems in concrete dams such as cracks in the dam, abutments, or foundation. Cracks may develop slowly at first, making it difficult to determine if they are widening or otherwise changing overtime. If a structural crack is discovered, it should be monitored for changes in width, length, and offset, and a monitoring network of instruments should be installed and read on a regular basis.

Outlet system deterioration is a problem for all dams but the frequency of such damage may be higher in concrete dams because of their greater average hydraulic pressure. Thus, outlet system inspection should be emphasized for large concrete dams.

Cracks at construction joints exist because concrete dams are built in segments, while expansion joints are built into dams to accommodate volumetric changes which occur in the structures after concrete placement. The latter are referred to as "designed" cracks These joints are typically constructed so that no bond or reinforcing, except non-bonded waterstops and dowels, extend across the joints.

Shrinkage cracks often occur when, during original construction, irregularities or pockets in the abutunent contact are filled with concrete and not allowed to fully cure prior to placement of adjacent portions of the dam. Subsequent shrinkage of the concrete may lead to irregular cracking at or near the abutment.

Shrinkage cracks are also caused by temperature variation. During winter months, the upper portion of a dam may become significantly colder than those portions which are in direct contact with reservoir water. This temperature differential can result in cracks which extend from the crest for some distance down each face of the dam. These cracks will probably occur at construction or expansion joints, if these are provided.

Shrinkage cracks can be a sign that certain portions of the dam are not carrying the design load. In such cases, the total compression load must be carried by a smaller percentage of the structure. It may be necessary to restore load-carrying capability by grouting affected areas. This work requires the assistance of an engineer.

Spalling is the process by which concrete chips and breaks away as a result of freezing and thawing Almost every concrete dam in colder climates experiences continued minor deterioration due to spalling. Because it usually affects only the surface of a structure, it is not ordinarily considered dangerous. However, if allowed to continue, spalling can result in structural damage, particularly if a dam is of thin cross section. Also, repair is necessary when reinforcing steel becomes exposed. The method of repair of spalled areas depends upon the depth of the deterioration. In severe situations, engineering assistance is required.

Minor leakage through concrete dams, although unsightly, is not usually dangerous, unless accompanied by structural cracking. The effect may be to promote deterioration due to freezing and thawing. However, increases in seepage could indicate that, through chemical action, materials are being leached from the dam and carried away by the flowing water. Dam owners should note that decreases in seepage could also occur as mineral deposits are formed in portions of the seepage channel. In either case, the condition is not inherently dangerous and detailed study is required before it can be determined if repair is necessary for other than cosmetic reasons.

5.5 SPILLWAYS

As detailed in Chapter 2, the main function of a spillway is to provide a safe exit for excess water in a reservoir. If a spillway is of inadequate size, a dam could be overtopped and fail. Similarly, defects in a spillway can cause failure by rapid erosion. A spillway should always be kept free of obstructions, have the ability to resist erosion, and be protected from deterioration. Because dams represent a substantial investment and spillways make up a major part of dam costs, a conscientious annual maintenance program should be pursued not only to protect the public but also to minimize costs as well.

The primary problems encountered with spillways include:

- Inadequate capacity
- Obstructions
- Erosion
- Deterioration
- Cracks
- Undermining of spillway outlet

Inadequate capacity is determined by several factors, such as drainage area served, magnitude or intensity of storms in the watershed, storage capacity of the reservoir, and the speed with which rain water flows into and fills the reservoir. An inadequate spillway can cause the water in a reservoir to overtop the dam.

Obstructions of a spillway may result from excessive growth of grass and weeds, thick brush, trees, debris, or landslide deposits. An obstructed spillway can have a substantially reduced discharge capacity which can lead to overtopping of the dam. Grass is usually not considered an obstruction; however, tall weeds, brush, and young trees should be periodically cleared from spillways. Similarly, any substantial amount of soil deposited in a spillway -whether from sloughing, landslide or sediment transport -- should be immediately removed. Timely removal of large rocks is especially important, since they can obstruct flow and encourage erosion.

Erosion of a spillway may occur during a large storm when large amounts of water flow for many hours. Severe damage of a spillway or complete wash-out can result if the spillway cannot resist erosion. If a spillway is excavated out of a rock formation or lined with concrete, erosion is usually not a problem. However, if a spillway is excavated in sandy soil, deteriorated granite, clay, or silt deposits, erosion protection is very important. Generally, resistance to erosion can be increased if a spillway channel has a mild slope, or if it is covered with a layer of grass or riprap with bedding material.

A spillway cannot be expected to perform properly if it has deteriorated Examples include: collapse of side slopes, riprap, concrete lining, approach section, the chute channel, the stilling basin, the discharge channel, or protective grass cover. These problems can cause water to flow under and around the protective material and lead to severe erosion. Remedial action must be taken as soon as any sign of deterioration has been detected.

Drying cracks in an earth spillway channel are usually not regarded as a functional problem. However, missing rocks in a riprap lining can be considered a "crack" in the protective cover, and must be repaired at once. Cracks in concrete lining of a spillway are commonly encountered. These cracks may be caused by uneven foundation settlement, shrinkage, slab displacement, or excessive earth or water pressure. Large cracks will allow water to wash out fine material below or behind the concrete slab, causing erosion, more cracks, and even severe displacement of the slab. The slab may even be dislodged and washed away by the flow. A severely cracked concrete spillway should be examined by and repaired under the supervision of an engineer.

Undermining of a spillway causes erosion at a spillway outlet, whether it be a pipe or overflow spillway, is one of the most common spillway problems. Severe undermining of the outlet can displace sections of pipe, cause slides in the downstream embankment of the dam and eventually lead to complete failure of a dam. Water must be conveyed safely from the reservoir to a point downstream of the dam without endangering the spillway itself or the embankment. Often the spillway outlet is adequately protected for normal flow conditions, but not for extreme flows. It is easy to misestimate the energy and force of flowing water and the resistance of outlet material (earth, rock, concrete, etc). The required level of protection is difficult to establish by visual inspection but can usually be determined by hydraulic calculations performed by a professional engineer.

Structures that provide complete erosion control at a spillway outlet are usually expensive, but often necessary. Less expensive protection can also be effective, but require extensive periodic maintenance as areas of erosion and deterioration develop.

The following four factors, often interrelated, contribute to erosion at the spillway outlet:

- 1. Flows emerge from the outlet are above the stream channel. If outlet flows emerge at the correct elevation, tailwater in the stream channel can absorb a substantial amount of the high velocity, flow and the hydraulic energy will be contained in the stilling basin.
- 2. Flows emerging from the spillway are generally free of sediment and therefore have substantial sedimentcarrying capacity. In obtaining sediment, moving water will scour soil material from the channel and leave eroded areas. Such erosion is difficult to design for and requires protection of the outlet for a safe distance downstream from the dam.
- 3. Flows leaving the outlet at high velocity can create negative pressures that can cause material to be loosened and removed from the floor and walls of the outlet channel. This action is called "cavitation" when it occurs on concrete or metal surfaces. Venting can sometimes be used to relieve negative pressures.
- 4. Water leaking through pipe joints and/or flowing along a pipe from the reservoir may weaken the soil structure around the pipe Inadequate compaction adjacent to such structures during construction can compound this problem.

Procedure for inspection - Spillway inspection is an important part of a dam safety program. The basic objective of spillway inspection is to detect any sign of obstruction, erosion, deterioration, misalignment, or cracking.

When inspecting an earth spillway, one should determine whether side slopes have sloughed, whether there is excessive vegetation in the channel; and one should look for signs of erosion and rodent activity. One should also use a probe to determine the hardness and moisture content of the soil, note the location of particularly wet or soft spots, and see if the stilling basin or drop structure is properly protected with rocks or riprap. Because some erosion is unavoidable during stilling, an owner should also determine whether such erosion might endanger the embankment itself. If the spillway is installed with a sill, a dam owner should also determine if there are any cracks or misalignment in the sill and check for erosion beneath or downstream of the sill.

Commonly encountered defects of concrete spillways and general inspection procedures for cracks, spalling, drains, joints, and misalignment are summarized in the following paragraphs.

Hairline cracks are usually harmless. Large cracks should be carefully inspected and their location, width, length, and orientation noted. Deterioration should be determined and exposure of reinforcing bars should be watched for.

Spillway surfaces exposed to freezethaw cycles often suffer from surface spalling. Chemical action, contamination, and unsound aggregates can also cause spalling. If spalling is extensive, the spalled area should be sketched or photographed, showing the length, width, and depth of the area. The problem should be examined closely to see if the remaining concrete has deteriorated or if reinforcing bars are exposed. The concrete should be tapped with a "bonker" or rock hammer to determine if voids exist below the surface. Shallow spalling should be examined from time to time to determine if it is becoming worse. Deep spalling should be repaired as soon as possible by an experienced contractor.

Walls of spillways are usually equipped with weep (or drain) holes. Occasionally spillway chute slabs are also equipped with weep holes. If all such holes are dry, the soil behind the wall or below the slab is probably dry. If some holes are draining while others are dry, the dry holes may be plugged by mud or mineral deposits. Plugged weep holes increase the chances for failure of retaining walls or chute slabs. The plugged holes should be probed to determine causes of blockage and soil or deposits cleaned out to restore drainage. If this work is not successful, rehabilitation should be performed as soon as possible under

the supervision of a professional engineer.

Spillway retaining walls and chute slabs are normally constructed in sections. Between adjoining sections, gaps or joints must be tightly sealed with flexible materials such as tar, epoxies, or other chemical compounds. Sometimes rubber or plastic diaphragm materials or copper foil are used to obtain watertightness. During inspection, one should note the location, length, and depth of any missing sealant, and probe open gaps to determine if soil behind the wall or below the slab has been undermined.

Misalignment of spillway retaining walls or chute slabs may be caused by foundation settlement or earth or water pressure. The inspector should carefully look at the upstream or downstream end of a spillway near the wall to determine if it has been tipped inward or outward. Relative displacement or offset between neighboring sections can be readily identified at joints. The horizontal as well as vertical displacement should be measured A fence on top of the retaining wall is usually erected in a straight line at the time of construction; thus any curve or distortion of the fence line may indicate wall deformation.

At the time of construction, the entire spillway chute should form a smooth surface. Thus, measurement of relative movement between neighboring chute slabs at joints will give a good indication of slab displacement. Misalignment or displacement of walls or the slab is often accompanied by cracks. A clear description of crack patterns should be recorded or photos taken to help in understanding the nature of the displacement.

5.6 INLETS, OUTLETS, AND DRAINS

A dam's inlet and outlet works, including internal drains, are essential to the operation of a dam. Items for inspection and special attention include:

- Reservoir pool levels
- Lake drains and internal drains
- Corrosion
- Trash racks on pipe spillways
 Cavitation
- The topics discussed above for spillways also are relevant.

Reservoir pool levels - Reservoir pool levels are controlled by spillway gates, lake drain and release structures, or flashboards. Flashboards are sometimes used to permanently or temporarily raise the pool level of water supply reservoirs. Flashboards should not be installed or allowed unless there is sufficient freeboard remaining to safely accommodate a design flood. Pool level draw down should not exceed about 1 foot per week for slopes composed of clay or silt materials except in emergency situations. Very flat slopes or slopes with free-draining upstream soils can, however, withstand more rapid draw down rates. Conditions causing or requiring temporary or permanent adjustment of the pool level include:

- Development of a problem which requires that the pool be lowered. Drawdown is a temporary solution until the problem is solved.
- Release of water downstream to supplement stream flow during dry conditions.
- Fluctuations in the service area's demand for water.
- Repair of boat docks in the winter and growth of aquatic vegetation along the shoreline.
- Requirements for recreation, hydropower, or water fowl and fish management.

Lake drains - A lake drain should always be operable so that the pool level can be drawn down in case of an emergency or for necessary repair. Lake drain valves or gates that have not been operated for a long time can present a special problem for owners. If the valve cannot be closed after it is opened, the impoundment could be completely drained. An uncontrolled and rapid drawdown could also cause more serious problems such as slides along the saturated upstream slope of the embankment or downstream flooding. Therefore, when a valve or gate is operated, it should be inspected and all appropriate parts lubricated and repaired. It is also prudent to advise downstream residents of large and/or prolonged discharges...

To test a valve or gate without risking complete drainage, one must physically block the drain inlet upstream from the valve. Some drains have been designed with this capability and have dual valves or gates, or slots for stoplogs (sometimes called bulkheads) upstream from the valve. Otherwise, divers can be hired to inspect the drain inlet and may be able to construct a temporary block at the inlet.

Other problems may be encountered when operating a lake drain. Sediment can build up and block the drain inlet, or debris can enter the valve chamber, hindering its function. The likelihood of these problems is greatly decreased if the valve or gate is operated and maintained periodically.

Corrosion - Corrosion is a common problem of pipe spillways and other conduits made of metal. Exposure to moisture, acid conditions, or salt will accelerate corrosion. In particular, acid runoff from strip mine areas will cause rapid corrosion of steel pipes. In such areas, pipes made of noncorrosive materials such as concrete or plastic should be used. Metal pipes which have been coated to resist accelerated corrosion are also available. The coating can be of epoxy, aluminum, zinc (galvanization), asbestos or mortar. Coatings applied to pipes in service are generally not very effective because of the difficulty of establishing a bond Similarly, bituminous coating cannot be expected to last more than one to two years on flowways. Of course, corrosion of metal parts of operating mechanisms can be effectively treated and prevented by keeping those parts greased and/or painted

Corrosion can also be controlled or arrested by installing cathodic protection. A metallic anode made out of a material such as magnesium is buried in the soil and is connected to the metal pipe by wire. An electric potential is established which causes the magnesium to corrode and not the pipe.

Trash on pipe spillways - Many dams have pipe and riser spillways. As with concrete spillways, pipe inlets that become plugged with debris or trash reduce spillway capacity. As a result, the potential for overtopping is greatly increased, particularly if there is only one outlet. If a dam has an emergency spillway channel, a plugged principal spillway will cause more frequent and greater than normal flow in the emergency spillway. Because emergency spillways are generally designed for infrequent flows of short duration, serious damage may result. For these reasons trash collectors or racks should be installed at the inlets to pipe spillways and lake drains.

A well-designed trashrack will stop large debris that could plug a pipe but allow unrestricted passage of water and smaller debris. Some of the most effective racks have submerged openings which allow water to pass beneath the trash into the riser inlet as the pool level rises. Openings that are too small will stop small debris such as twigs and leaves, which in turn will cause a progression of larger items to build up, eventually completely blocking the inlet. Trashrack openings should be at least 6 inches across regardless of the pipe size. The larger the principal spillway conduit, the larger the trashrack opening should be. The largest possible openings should be used, up to a maximum of about 2 feet.

A trashrack should be properly attached to the riser inlet and strong enough to withstand the forces of fast-flowing debris, heavy debris, and ice. If the riser is readily accessible, vandals may throw riprap stone into it. The size of the trashrack openings should not be decreased to prevent this. Instead rock that is larger than the trashrack openings or too large to handle should be used for riprap.

Maintenance should include periodic checking of the rack for rusted and broken sections and repair as needed. The trashrack should be checked frequently during and after storms to ensure that it is functioning properly and to remove accumulated debris.

Cavitation - When water flows through an outlet system and passes restrictions (e.g., valves), a pressure drop may occur. If localized water pressures drop below the vapor pressure of water, a partial vacuum is created and the water actually boils, causing shockwaves which can damage the outlet pipes and control valves. This process can be a serious problem for large dams where discharge velocities are high.

Testing the outlet system - All valves should be fully opened and closed at least once a year. This not only limits corrosion buildup on control stems and gate guides, but also provides an opportunity to check for smooth operation of the system. Jerky or erratic operation could signal problems, and indicate the need for more detailed inspection.

The full range of gate settings should be checked. The person performing the inspection should slowly open the valve, checking for noise and vibration - certain valve settings may result in greater turbulence. He or she should also listen for noise which sounds like gravel being rapidly transported through the system. This sound indicates that cavitation occurring, and these gate settings should be avoided. The operation of all mechanical and electrical systems, backup electric motors, power generators, and power and lighting wiring associated with the outlet should also be checked.

Inspecting the outlet system -Accessible portions of the outlet, such as the outfall structure and control, can be easily and regularly inspected. However, severe problems are commonly associated with deterioration or failure of portions of the system which are either buried in the dam or normally under water.

Areas to be inspected include:

- Outlet pipes 30 inches or greater in diameter can be inspected internally, provided the system has an upstream valve allowing the pipe to be emptied. Tapping the conduit interior with a hammer can help locate voids behind the pipe. This type of inspection should be performed at least once a year.
- Small diameter outlet pipes can be inspected by remote TV camera if necessary. The camera is channeled through the conduit and transmits a picture back to an equipment truck. This type of inspection is expensive and usually requires the services of an engineer. However, if no other method of inspection is possible, inspection by TV is recommended at least once every five years.
• Outlet intake structures, wet wells, and outlet pipes with only downstream valves are the most difficult dam appurtenances to inspect because they are usually under water. These should be inspected whenever the reservoir is drawn down or at five year intervals. If a definite problem is suspected, or if the reservoir remains full over extended periods, divers should be hired to perform an underwater inspection.

5.7 OTHER AREAS

Other areas requiring inspection include:

- Mechanical and electrical systems
- Reservoir surface and shoreline
- Upstream watershed
- Downstream floodplains

Mechanical equipment includes spillway gates, sluice gates or valves for lake drains or water supply pipes, stoplogs, sump pumps, flashboards, relief wells, emergency power sources, siphons, and other devices All mechanical and associated electrical equipment should be operated at least once a year and preferably more often. The test should cover the full operating range of the equipment under actual operating conditions. Each operating device should be permanently marked for easy identification, and all operating equipment should be kept accessible. All controls should be checked for proper security to prevent vandalism, and finally, all operating instructions should be checked for clarity and maintained in a secure, but readily accessible location.

The reservoir surface and shoreline should be inspected to identify possible problems away from the actual structure. Whirlpools can indicate submerged outlets. Large land slides coming into the reservoir could cause waves overtopping the dam.

Floods arise from the upstream watershed Therefore, characteristics of the watershed, such as impervious areas (e.g. parking lots), relate directly to the magnitude of a flood. Urban development in a watershed can increase the size of flood peaks and the volume of runoff, thereby making a previously acceptable spillway inadequate. Awareness of upstream development and other factors which might influence reservoir inflows is important in order to anticipate possible problems and necessary or modifications in the dam.

Development in downstream floodplains is also very important to the dam owner as the extent of development and flood preparedness relate directly to loss of life and damages should the dam fail. Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *

31 FIGURES 5.3.1 INSPECTION GUIDELINES -**EMBANKMENT UPSTREAM SLOPE**

PROBLEM



PROBABLE CAUSE

Piping or internal erosion of embankment materials or foundation causes a sinkhole. The cave-in of an eroded cavern can result in a sink hole. A small hole in the wall of an outlet pipe can develop a sink hole. Dirty water at the exit indicates erosion of the dam

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

HAZARDOUS

Piping can empty a reservoir through a small hole in the wall or can lead to failure of a dam as soil pipes erode through the foundation or a pervious part of the dam

LARGE CRACKS



A portion of the embankment has moved because of loss of strength, or the foundation may have moved, causing embankment movement.

HAZARDOUS

HAZARDOUS

Indicates onset of massive slide or settlement caused by foundation failure.

A series of slides can lead to obstruction of

the outlet or failure of the dam.

SLIDE, SLUMP OR SLIP



SCARPS, BENCHES, OVERSTEEP AREAS

Earth or rocks move down the slope along a

slippage surface because of too steep a slope, or the foundation moves Also, look for

slides movement in reservoir basin.

Wave action, local settlement, or ice action cause soil and rock to erode and slide to the lower part of the slope forming a bench.

Erosion lessens the width and possible height of the embankment and could lead to increased seepage or overtopping of the dam

7.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

Inspect other parts of the dam for seepage or more sink holes. Identify exact cause of sink holes. Check seepage and leakage outflows for dirty water. A qualified engineer should inspect the conditions and recommend further actions to be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

Depending on embankment involved, draw reservoir level down. A qualified engineer should inspect the conditions and recommend further actions to be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

Evaluate extent of the slide Monitor slide. (See Chapter 6.) Draw the reservoir level down if safety of dam is threatened. A qualified engineer should inspect the conditions and recommend further actions to be taken.

ENGINEER REQUIRED

Determine exact cause of scarps. Do necessary earthwork, restore embankment to original slope and provide adequate protection (bedding and riprap). See Chapter

BROKEN DOWN MISSING RIPRAP



EROSION BEHIND POORLY GRADED RIPRAP



PROBABLE CAUSE

Poor quality riprap has deteriorated. Wave action or ice action has displaced riprap. Round and similar-sized rocks have rolled downhill

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

Wave action against these unprotected areas decreases embankment width

RECOMMEND ACTIONS

Re-establish normal slope. Place bedding and competent riprap. (See Chapter 7.)

Similar-sized rocks allow waves to pass between them and erode small gravel particles and soil.

Soil is eroded away from behind the riprap. This allows riprap to settle, providing less protection and decreased embankment width.

Re-establish effective slope protection. Place bedding material ENGINEER RE-QUIRED for design for gradation and size for rock for bedding and riprap. A qualified engineer should inspect the conditions and recommend further actions to be taken.

Figures 5.3.2 Inspection Guidelines -Downstream Slope

SLIDE/SLOUGH



1. Lack of or loss of strength of embankment material.

2. Loss of strength can be attributed to infiltration of water into the embankment or loss of support by the foundation.

HAZARDOUS

Massive slide cuts through crest or up-stream slope reducing treeboard and cross section. Structural collapse or overtopping can result

1. Measure extent and displacement of slide.

2. If continued movement is seen, begin lowering water level until movement stops. 3. Have a qualified engineer inspect the condition and recommend further action. ENGINEER REQUIRED

³³ PROBLEM

TRANSVERSE CRACKING



CAVE IN/COLLAPSE



LONGITUDINAL CRACKING



SLUMP (LOCALIZED CONDITION)



PROBABLE CAUSE

Differential settlement of the embankment also leads to tranverse cracking (e.g., center settles more than abutments).

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

HAZARDOUS

HAZARDOUS

Settlement or shrinkage cracks can lead to seepage of reservoir water through the dam. Shrinkage cracks allow water to enter the embankment. This promotes saturation and increases freeze-thaw action

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

1. If necessary, plug upstream end of crack to prevent flows from the reservoir. 2. A qualified engineer should inspect the conditions and recommend further actions to be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

1. Lack of adequate compaction.

2. Rodent hole below.

of embankment.

3. Piping through embankment or foundation.

1. Drying and shrinkage of surface material.

2. Downstream movement of settlement

1. Can be an early warning of a potential

Indicates possible wash out of embankment.

2. Shrinkage cracks allow water to enter the embankment and freezing will further crack

strength in embankment can lead to failure.

1 Inspect for and immediately repair rodent holes. Control rodents to prevent future damage.

2. Have a qualified engineer inspect the con-dition and recommend further action ENGINEER REQUIRED

1. If cracks are from drying, dress area with well-compacted material to keep surface water out and natural moisture in. 2. If cracks are extensive, a qualified engineer should inspect the conditions and recommend further actions to be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

slide

the embankment. 3. Settlement or slide showing loss of

Preceded by erosion undercutting a portion of the slope. Can also be found on steep slopes.

Can expose impervious zone to erosion and lead to further slumps.

1. Inspect area for seepage. 2. Monitor for progressive failure 3. Have a qualified engineer inspect the con-dition and recommend further action. ENGINEER REQUIRED

³⁴ PROBLEM

EROSION



TREES/OBSCURING BRUSH



RODENT ACTIVITY



LIVESTOCK/CATTLE TRAFFIC



PROBABLE CAUSE

Water from intense rainstorms or snow-melt carries surface material down the slope, resulting in continuous troughs.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

Can be hazardous if allowed to continue. Erosion can lead to eventual deterioration of the downstream slope and failure of the structure.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

1. The preferred method to protect eroded areas is rock or riprap. 2. Re-establishing protective grasses can be adequate if the problem is detected early

Natural vegetation in area.

Large tree roots can create seepage paths. Bushes can obscure visual inspection and harbor rodents.

1. Remove all large, deep-rooted trees and shrubs on or near the embankment. Properly backfill void (See Chapter 7.) 2 Control vegetation on the embankment that obscures visual inspection. (See Chapter 7.)

Can reduce length of seepage path, and lead to piping failure. If tunnel exists through most of the dam, it can lead to failure of the dam.

 Control rodents to prevent more damage.
 Backfill existing rodent holes. 3. Remove rodents. Determine exact location of digging and extent of tunneling. Remove habitat and repair damages. (See Chapter 7.)

Excessive travel by livestock especially harmful to slope when wet.

Over-abundance of rodents Holes, tunnels and caverns are caused by animal burrow-

ings. Certain habitats like cattail type plants

and trees close to the reservoir encourage

these animals.

Creates areas bare of erosion protection and causes erosion channels. Allows water to stand. Area susceptible to drying cracks

1. Fence livestock outside embankment area. 2. Repair erosion protection, i.e., riprap, grass.

Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *

35 ³⁵ Figures 5.3.3 Inspection Guidelines -**Embankment Crest**

PROBLEM

LONGITUDINAL CRACK



VERTICAL DISPLACEMENI



PROBABLE CAUSE

1. Uneven settlement between adjacent sections or zones within the embankment. 2. Foundation failure causing loss of support to embankment. 3. Initial stages of embankment slide.

1. Vertical movement between adjacent sec-

2. Structural deformation or failure caused

by structural stress or instability, or by

tions of the embankment.

failure of the foundation.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

HAZARDOUS

1. Creates local area of low strength within embankment. Could be the point of initiation of future structural movement, deformation, or failure.

2. Provides entrance point for surface run-off into embankment, allowing saturation of adjacent embankment area, and possible hubrication which could lead to localized failure

HAZARDOUS

1. Provides local area of low strength within embankment which could cause future movement.

2. Leads to structural instability or failure. 3. Provides entrance point for surface water that could further lubricate failure plane. 4 Reduces available embankment cross section

CAVE-IN ON CREST



- 1. Rodent activity.
- 2. Hole in outlet conduit is causing erosion of embankment material.
- 3. Internal erosion or piping of embankment material by seepage.
- 4. Breakdown of dispersive clays within embankment by seepage waters.

HAZARDOUS

1. Void within dam could cause localized caving, sloughing, instability, or reduced embankment cross section. 2. Entrance point for surface water.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

1. Inspect crack and carefully record location, length, depth, width, alignment, and other pertinent physical features. Immediately stake out limits of cracking. Monitor frequently.

2. Engineer should determine cause of cracking and supervise steps necessary to reduce danger to dam and correct condition. 3. Effectively seal the cracks at the crest's surface to prevent infiltration by surface water

4. Continue to routinely monitor crest for evidence of further cracking. ENGINEER REQUIRED

1. Carefully inspect displacement and record its location, vertical and horizontal displacement, length, and other physical features Immediately stake out limits of cracking. 2. Engineer should determine cause of displacement and supervise all steps necessary to reduce danger to dam and correct condition.

3. Excavate area to the bottom of the displacement Backfill excavation using competent material and correct construction techniques, and under supervision of engineer. 4. Continue to monitor areas routinely for evidence of future cracking or movement. (See Chapter 6.) ENGINEER REQUIRED

1. Carefully inspect and record location and physical characteristics (depth, width, length) of cave in

2. Engineer should determine cause of cave in and supervise all steps necessary to reduce threat to dam and correct condition. 3. Excavate cave in, slope sides of excavation, and backfill hole with competent material using proper construction techniques. (See Chapter 7.) This should be supervised by engineer. ENGINEER REQUIRED

TRANSVERSE CRACKING



CREST MISALIGNMENT

PROBABLE CAUSE

1. Uneven movement between adjacent segments of the embankment. 2. Deformation caused by structural stress or instability.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

HAZARDOUS

1. Can provide a path for seepage through the embankment cross section. 2. Provides local area of low strength within embankment. Future structural movement, deformation or failure could begin. 3. Provides entrance point for surface runoff to enter embankment.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

1. Inspect crack and carefully record crack location, length, depth, width, and other pertinent physical features. Stake out limits of cracking

2. Engineer should determine cause of cracking and supervise all steps necessary to reduce danger to dam and correct condition. 3. Excavate crest along crack to a point below the bottom of the crack. Then backfilling excavation using competent material and correct construction techniques. This will seal the crack against seepage and surface runoff. (See Chapter 7.) This should be supervised by engineer. 4. Continue to monitor crest routinely for

evidence of future cracking. (See Chapter 6.)

ENGINEER REQUIRED

1. Establish monuments across crest to determine exact amount, location, and extent of misalignment. 2. Engineer should determine sause of mis-

alignment and supervise all steps necessary to reduce threat to dam and correct condition

3. Monitor crest monuments on a scheduled basis following remedial action to detect possible future movement. (See Chapter 6.)

ENGINEER REQUIRED

LOW AREA IN CREST OF DAM



- 1. Excessive settlement in the embankment or foundation directly beneath the low area in the crest.
- 2. Internal erosion of embankment material. 3. Foundation spreading to upstream and/or
- downstream direction. 4. Prolonged wind erosion of crest area. 5. Improper final grading following construction

Reduces freeboard available to pass flood flows safely through spillway.

1. Establish monuments along length of crest to determine exact amount, location, and extent of settlement in crest. 2. Engineer should determine cause of low area and supervise all steps necessary to reduce possible threat of the dam and correct condition 3. Re-establish uniform crest elevation over

crest length by placing fill in low area using proper construction techniques. This should be supervised by engineer. 4. Re-establish monuments across crest of dam and monitor monuments on a routine basis to detect possible future settlement.

ENGINEER REQUIRED

1. Movement between adjacent parts of the structure.

2. Uneven deflection of dam under loading by reservoir.

3. Structural deformation or failure near area of misalignment.

1. Area of misalignment is usually accom-

panied by low area in crest which reduces freeboard. 2. Can produce local areas of low embank-

ment strength which may lead to failure.

³⁷ PROBLEM

OBSCURING VEGETATION



RODENT ACTIVITY



GULLY ON CREST



RUTS ALONG CREST



PROBABLE CAUSE

Neglect of dam and lack of proper maintenance procedures.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

1. Obscures large parts of the dam, preventing adequate, accurate visual inspection of all parts of the dam. Problems which threaten the integrity of the dam can develop and remain undetected until they progress to a point that threatens the dam's safety.

2. Associated root systems develop and penetrate into the dam's cross section. When the vegetation dies, the decaying root systems can provide paths for seepage. This reduces the effective seepage path through the embankment and could lead to possible piping situations.

3. Prevents easy access to all parts of the dam for operation, maintenance, and inspection.

4. Provides habitat for rodents.

1. Entrance point for surface runoff to enter dam. Could saturate adjacent portions of the dam.

2. Especially dangerous if hole penetrates dam below phreatic line. During periods of high storage, seepage path through the dam would be greatly reduced and a piping situation could develop.

1. Can reduce available freeboard,

2. Reduces cross-sectional area of dam. 3. Inhibits access to all parts of the crest and dam.

4. Can result in a hazardous condition if due to overtopping.

> 1. Drain standing water from ruts. 2. Regrade and recompact crest to restore integrity and provide proper drainage to upstream slope. (See Chapter 7.) 3. Provide gravel or roadbase material to accommodate traffic.

4. Do periodic maintenance and regrading to prevent reformation of ruts.

1. Remove all damaging growth from the dam. This would include removal of trees, bushes, brush, conifers, and growth other than grass. Grass should be encouraged on all segments of the dam to prevent erosion by surface runoff. Root systems should also be removed to the maximum practical extent. The void which results from removing the root system should be backfilled with wellcompetent, well-compacted material. 2. Future undesirable growth should be removed by cutting or spraying, as part of an annual maintenance program. (See Chap-

ter 7.) 3. All cutting or debris resulting from the vegetative removal should be immediately taken from the dam and properly disposed of outside the reservoir basin.

1. Completely backfill the hole with competent, well-compacted material. 2. Initate a rodent control program to reduce the burrowing animal population and to prevent future damage to the dam. (See Chapter 7.)

1. Restore freeboard to dam by adding fill material in low area, using proper construc-tion techniques. (See Chapter 7.) 2. Regrading crest to provide proper drainage of surface runoff.

3. If gully was caused by overtopping, pro-vide adequate spillway which meets current design standards. This should be done by engineer.

4. Re-establish protective cover.

Heavy vehicle traffic without adequate or proper maintenance or proper crest surfacing.

1. Poor grading Xand improper drainage of

crest. Improper drainage causes surface

runoff to collect and drain of crest at low point in upstream or downstream shoulder.

2. Inadequate spillway capacity which has

caused dam to overtop.

1. Inhibits easy access to all parts of crest.

2. Allows continued development of rutting. 3. Allows standing water to collect and saturate crest of dam.

4. Operating and maintenance vehicles can get stuck.

Burrowing animals.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

³⁸ PROBLEM

PUDDLING ON CREST-POOR DRAINAGE



PROBABLE CAUSE

1. Poor grading and improper drainage of crest.

2. Localized consolidation or settlement on crest allows puddles to develop.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

1. Cause localized saturation of the crest. 2. Inhibits access to all parts of the dam and crest.

3. Becomes progressively worse if not corrected.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

1. Drain standing water from puddles. 2. Regrade and recompact crest to restore integrity and provide proper drainage to upstream slope. (See Chapter 7..) 3. Provide gravel or roadbase material to accommodate traffic.

4. Do periodic maintenance and regrading to prevent reformation of low areas.

DRYING CRACKS



Material on the crest of dam expands and contracts with alternate wetting and drying of weather cycles. Drying cracks are usually short, shallow, narrow, and many. Provides point of entrance for surface runoff and surface moisture, causing staturation of adjacent embankment areas. This staturation, and later drying of the dam, could cause further cracking

 Seal surface of cracks with a tight, impervious material (See Chapter 7.)
 Routinely grade crest to provide proper drainage and fill cracks. -OR 3. Cover crest with non-plastic (not clay) material to prevent large moisture content variations.

Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *

39 Figures 5.3.4 Inspection Guidelines Embankment Seepage Areas

PROBLEM

EXCESSIVE QUANIITY AND/OR MUDDY WATER EXITING FROM A POINT



SIREAM OF WAIER EXITING THROUGH CRACKS NEAR THE CREST



SEEPAGE WAIER **EXITING AS A BOIL** IN THE FOUNDATION



PROBABLE CAUSE

1. Water has created an open pathway, channel, or pipe through the dam. The water is eroding and carrying embankment material

2. Large amounts of water have accumulated in the downstream slope. Water and embankment materials are exiting at one point. Surface agitation may be causing the muddy water

3. Rodents, frost action or poor construction have allowed water to create an open pathway or pipe through the embankment.

1. Severe drying has caused shrinkage of embankment material. 2. Settlement in the embankment or foundation is causing the transverse cracks.

Some part of the foundation material is sup-

plying a flow path. This could be caused by a

sand or gravel layer in the foundation.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

HAZARDOUS

1. Continued flows can saturate parts of the embankment and lead to slides in the area.

2. Continued flows can further erode embankment materials and lead to failure of the dam.

HAZARDOUS

Flow through the crack can cause failure of the dam.

the flow stabilizes or stops.

ENGINEER REQUIRED

plug if possible.

be taken.

the flow. 2. The water level in he reservoir should be lowered until it is below the level of the

cracks. 3. A qualified engineer should inspect the condition and recommend further actions to be taken.

HAZARDOUS

Increased flows can lead to erosion of the foundation and failure of the dam.

1. Examine the boil for transportation of foundation materials.

2. If soil particles are moving downstream, sandbags or earth should be used to create a dike around the boil. The pressures created by the water level within the dike may control flow velocities and temporarily prevent further erosion.

3. If erosion is becoming greater, the reservoir level should be lowered 4. A qualified engineer should inspect the condition and recommend further actions to

be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

1. Begin measuring outflow quantity and establishing whether water is getting muddier, staying the same, or clearing up. 2. If quantity of flow is increasing the water level in the reservoir should be lowered until

3. Search for opening on upstream side and

4. A qualified engineer should inspect the condition and recommend further actions to

1. Plug the upstream side of the crack to stop

SEEPAGE EXITING AT ABUTMENT CONTACT



LARGE AREA WET OR **PRODUCING FLOW**



MARKED CHANGE IN VEGETATION



BULGE IN LARGE WET AREA



PROBABLE CAUSE

1. Water flowing through pathways in the abutment. 2. Water flowing through the embankment.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

HAZARDOUS Can lead to erosion of embankment materials and failure of the dam.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

1. Study leakage area to determine quantity

of flow and extent of saturation.

2. Inspect daily for developing slides.

lowered to assure the safety of the embank-

ment.

4. A qualified engineer should inspect the conditions and recommend further actions to be taken.

ENGINEER REQUIRED

A seepage path has developed through the abutment or embankment materials and failure of the dam can occur.

HAZARDOUS

I. Increased flows could lead to erosion of embankment material and failure of the dam

2. Saturation of the embankment can lead to local slides which could cause failure of the dam.

1. Stake out the saturated area and monitor for growth or shrinking. 2. Measure any outflows as accurately as possible

3. Reservoir level may need to be lowered if saturated areas increase in size at a fixed storage level or if flow increases. 4. A qualified engineer should inspect the condition and recommend further actions to be taken.

ENGINEER REQUIRED

1. Embankment material are supplying flows paths. 2. Natural seeding by wind.

3. Change in seed type during early post construction seeding.

Can show a saturated area

1. Use probe and shovel to establish if the materials in this area are wetter than surrounding areas. 2 If areas shows wetness, when surrounding areas do not, a qualified engineer should inspect the condition and recommend further

actions to be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

Downstream embankment materials have begun to move.

HAZARDOUS

Failure of the embankment result from massive sliding can follow these early movements.

1. Compare embankment cross section to the end of construction condition to see if observed condition may reflect end of construction.

2. Stake out affected area and accurately measure outflow. 3. A qualified engineer should inspect the

condition and recommend further actions to be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

3. Water level in reservoir may need to be

TRAMPOLINE EFFECT IN LARGE SOGGY AREA



LEAKAGE FROM ABUTMENTS BEYOND THE DAM



PROBABLE CAUSE

1. Water moving rapidly through the embankment or foundation is being controlled or contained by a well-established turf root system.

Water moving through cracks and fissures in the abutment materials.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

Condition shows excessive seepage in the area. If control layer of turf is destroyed, rapid erosion of foundation materials could result in failure of the dam.

Can lead to rapid erosion of abutment and evacuation of the reservoir. Can lead to massive slides near or downstream from the dam.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

1. Carefully inspect the area for outlow quantity and any transported material. 2. A qualified engineer should inspect the condition and recommend further actions to be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

1. Carefully inspect the area to determine quantity of flow and amount of transported material. 2. A qualified engineer or geologist should

inspect the condition and recommend further actions to be taken.

WET AREA IN HORIZONTAL BAND



LARGE INCREASE IN FLOW OR SEDIMENT IN DRAIN OUTFALL



Frost layer or layer of sandy material in original construction.

A shortened seepage path or increased storage levels.

HAZARDOUS

1. Wetting of areas below the area of excessive seepage can led to localized instability of the embankment. (SLIDES) 2. Excessive flows can lead to accelerated erosion of embankment materials and failure of the dam.

HAZARDOUS

1. Higher velocity flows can cause erosion of drain then embankment materials. 2. Can lead to piping failure.

1. Determine as closely as possible the flow being produced.

2. If flow increases, reservoir level should be reduced until flow stabilizes or stops. 3. Stake out the exact area involved. 4. Using hand tools, try to identify the material allowing the flow. 5. A qualified engineer should inspect the condition and recommend further actions to be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

1. Accurately measures outflow quantity and determine amount of increase over previous flow.

2. Collect jar samples to compare turbidity. 3. If either quantity or turbidity has increased by 25%, a qualified engineer should evaluate the condition and recommend further actions. ENGINEER REQUIRED

42 Figures 5.4 Inspection Guidelines -**Concrete Upstream Slope**

PROBLEM

CRACKED DETERIORATED CONCRETE FACE



CRACKS DUE TO DRYING



The soil loses its moisture and shrinks, causing cracks. NOTE: Usually seen on crest and downstream slope mostly.

PROBABLE CAUSE

Concrete deteriorated resulting from weath-

ering. Joint filler deteriorated or displaced.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

Soil is eroded behind the face and caverns can be formed. Unsupported sections of concrete crack Ice action may displace concrete.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

Determine cause. Either patch with grout or contact engineer for permanent repair method

2. If damage is extensive, a qualified engineer should inspect the conditions and recommend further actions to be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

Heavy rains can fill up cracks and cause small parts of embarkment to move along internal slip surface.

1. Monitor cracks for increases in width, depth, or length. 2 A qualified engineer should inspect the condition and recommend further actions to be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

Figures 5.5 **Inspection Guidelines** -Spiliways

EXCESSIVE VEGETATION OR DEBRIS IN CHANNEL



Accumulation of slide materials, dead trees, excessive vegetative growth, etc., in spillway channel.

Reduced discharge capacity; overflow of spillway; overtopping of dam. Prolonged overtopping can cause failure of the dam.

Clean out debris periodically; control vegetative growth in spillway channel. Install log boom in front of spillway entrance to intercept debris.

EROSION CHANNELS



EXCESSIVE EROSION IN EARTH-SLIDE CAUSES CONCENTRATED FLOWS



END OF SPILLWAY CHUTE



WALL DISPLACEMENT



PROBABLE CAUSE

Surface runoff from intense rainstorms or flow from spillway carries surface material down the slope, resulting in continous troughs. Livestock traffic create gullies where flow concentrates varies.

Discharge velocity too high; bottom and

slope material loose or deteriorated; channel

and bank slopes too steep; bare soil

unprotected; poor construction protective

Poor configuration of stilling basin area.

Highly erodible materials. Absence of cutoff

wall at end of chute.

surface failed.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

Unabated erosion can lead to slides, slumps or slips which can result in reduced spillway capacity. Inadequate spillway capacity can lead to embankment overtopping and result in dam failure.

Disturbed flow pattern; loss of material, increased sediment load downstream; collapse of banks; failure of spillway; can lead to rapid evacuation of the reservoir through the severely eroded spillway.

HAZARDOUS

Structural damage to spillway structure; collapse of slab and wall lead to costly repair.

Dewater affected area; clean out eroded area and properly backfill. Improve stream channel below chute; provide properly sized riprap in stilling basin area. Install cutoff wall.

Poor workmanship; uneven settlement of foundation; excessive earth and water pressure; insufficent steel bar reinforcement of concrete.

Minor displacement will create eddies and turbulence in the flow, causing erosion of the soil behind the wall. Major displacement will cause severe cracks and eventual failure of the structure.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

Photograph condition. Repair damaged areas by replacing eroded material with compacted fill. Protect areas against future erosion by installing suitable rock riprap. Revegetate area if appropriate. Bring condition to the attention of the engineer during next inspection.

Minimize flow velocity by proper design. Use sound material. Keep channel and bank slopes mild. Encourage growth of grass on soil surface. Construct smooth and wellcompacted surfaces. Protect surface with riprap, asphalt, or concrete. Repair eroded part using sound construction practices.

Reconstruction should be done according to sound engineering practices. Foundation should be carefully prepared. Adequate weep holes should be installed to relieve water pressure behind wall. Use enough reinforcement in the concrete. Anchor walls to prevent further displacement. Install struts between spillway walls is needed. Clean out and backflush drains to assure proper operations. Consult an engineer before actions are taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

LARGE CRACKS



OPEN OR DISPLACED JOINTS



BREAKDOWN AND LOSS OF RIPRAP



MATERIAL DETERIORATION-SPALLING AND DISINTEGRATION OF RIPRAP, CONCRETE, ETC.



PROBABLE CAUSE

Construction defect; local concentrated stress; local material deterioration; foundation failure, excessive backfill pressure.

Excessive and uneven settlement of foun-

dation; sliding of concrete slab; construction

joint too wide and left unsealed. Sealant

Slope too steep; material poorly graded:

failure of subgrade; flow velocity too high;

improper placement of material; bedding

Use of unsound or defective materials; struc-

tures subject to freeze-thaw cycles; improper

maintenance practices; harmful chemicals.

material or foundation washed away.

deteriorated and washed away.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

HAZARDOUS

Disturbance in flow patterns; erosion of foundation and backfill; eventual collapse of structure.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

Large cracks without large displacement should be repaired by patching.

Surrounding areas should be cleaned or cut out before patching material is applied. (See Chapter 7.) Installation of weep holes or other actions may be needed.

HAZARDOUS

Erosion of foundation material may weaken support and cause further cracks; pressure induced by water flowing over displaced joints may wash away wall or slab, or cause extensive undermining.

1/2 inch. All joints should be sealed with asphalt or other flexible materials. Waterstops should be used where feasible. Clean the joint, replace eroded materials, and seal the joint. Foundations should be properly drained and prepared. Underside of chute slabs should have ribs of enough depth to prevent sliding. Avoid steep chute slope. ENGINEER REQUIRED

HAZARDOUS

Erosion of channel bottom and banks; failure of spillway.

Design a stable slope for channel bottom and banks. Riprap material should be well graded (the material should contain small, medium, and large particles). Sub-grade should be properly prepared before placement of riprap. Install filter fabric if necessary. Control flow velocity in the spillway by proper design. Riprap should be placed according to specification. Services of an engineer are recommended. ENGINEER REQUIRED

Structure life will be shortened; premature failure.

Avoid using shale or sandstone for riprap. Add air-entraining agent when mixing concrete. Use only clean good quality aggregates in the concrete. Steel bars should have at least 1 inch of concrete cover. Concrete should be kept wet and protected from freezing during curing. Timber should be treated before using.

Construction joint should be no wider than

POOR SURFACE DRAINAGE



CONCRETE EROSION, ABRASION, AND FRACTURING



LEAKAGE IN OR AROUND SPILLWAY



TOO MUCH LEAKAGE FROM SPILLWAY UNDER DRAINS



PROBABLE CAUSE

No weep holes; no drainage facility; plugged drains.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

Wet foundation has lower supporting capacity; uplift pressure resulting from seepage water may cause damage to spillway chute; accumulation of water may also increase total pressure on spillway walls and cause damage.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

Install weep holes on spillway walls. Inner end of hole should be surrounded and packed with graded filtering material. Install drain system under spillway near downstream end. Clean out existing weep holes. Backflush and rehabilitate drain system under the supervision of an engineer. ENGINEER REQUIRED

Flow velocity too high (usually occurs at lower end of chute in high dams); rolling of gravel and rocks down the chute; cavity behind or below concrete slab.

1. Cracks and joints in geologic formation at

2. Gravel or sand layers at spillway are per-

spillway are permitting seepage.

mitting seepage.

Pock marks and spalling of concrete surface may progressively become worse; small hole may cause undermining of foundation, leading to failure of structure.

Remove rocks and gravels from spillway chute before flood season. Raise water level in stilling basin. Use good quality concrete. Assure concrete surface is smooth. ENGINEER REQUIRED

HAZARDOUS

1. Could lead to excessive loss of stored water.

2. Could lead to a progressive failure if velocities are high enough to cause erosion of natural materials.

1. Examine exit area to see if type of material can explain leakage. 2. Measure flow quantity and check for erosion of natural materials. 3. If flow rate or amount of eroded materials increases rapidly, reservoir level should be lowered until flow stabilizes or stops. 4. A qualified engineer should inspect the condition and recommend further actions to be taken. ENGINEER REQUIRED

Drain or cutoff may have failed.

HAZARDOUS

1. Excessive flows under the spillway could lead to erosion of foundation material and collapse of parts of the spillway. 2. Uncontrolled flows could lead to loss of stored water.

Same as above.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

1. Can cause walls to tip in and over. Flows

46 PROBLEM

SEEPAGE FROM A CONSTRUCTION JOINT OR **CRACK IN CONCRETE** STRUCTURE



Figures 5.6 Inspection Guidelines -Inlets, Outlets and Drains

OUTLET PIPE DAMAGE

CRACK



HOLE



JOINT OFFSET



CONTROL WORKS



THEE CONTRACTOR STRUCTURE

PROBABLE CAUSE

Water is collecting behind structure because of insufficient drainage or clogged weep holes.

through concrete can lead to rapid deterioration from weathering.

2. If the spillway is located within the embankment, rapid erosion can lead to failure of the dam.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

1. Check area behind wall for puddling of surface water.

2. Check and clean as needed; drain outfalls, flush lines, and weep holes. 3. If condition persists a qualified engineer should inspect the condition and recommend

further actions to be taken.

Excessive seepage, possible internal erosion.

HAZARDOUS

Excessive seepage, possible internal erosion.

HAZARDOUS

Provides passageway for water to exit or enter pipe, resulting in erosion of internal materials of the dam.

Causes control support block to tilt; control stein may bind. Control head works may settle. Gate may not open all the way. Support block may fail completely, leaving outlet

HAZARDOUS Outlet is inoperable.

Loss of support for control stem. Stem may buckle and break under even normal use, (as in this example).

Check for evidence of water either entering or exiting pipe at crack/hole/etc.

Tap pipe in vicinity of damaged area, listening for hollow sound which shows a void has formed along the outside of the conduit.

If a progressive failure is suspected, request engineering advice.

Any of these conditions can mean the control is either inoperable or at best partly

minimized or discontinued. If the outlet system has a second control valve, consider using it to regulate releases until repairs can be made. Engineering help is recommended.

Rust (steel pipe) Erosion (concrete pipe) Cavitation

Settlement; impact,

Settlement or poor construction practice.

1. BROKEN SUPPORT BLOCK Concrete deterioration. Excessive force exerted on control stein by trying to open gate when it was jammed.

2. BENT/BROKEN CONTROL STEM Rust. Excess force used to open or close gate. Inadequate or broken stem guides.

3. BROKEN/MISSING STEM GUIDES

Rust. Inadequate lubrication. Excess force used to open or close gate when it was jammed.

inoperable.

. .

operable. Use of the system should be

FAILURE OF CONCRETE **OUTFALL STRUCTURE**



OUTLET RELEASES ERODING TOE OF DAM



VALVE LEAKAGE DEBRIS STUCK UNDER GATE



CRACKED GATE LEAF



DAMAGE GATE SEAT **OR GUIDES**



SEEPAGE WATER EXITING FROM A POINT ADJACENT TO THE OUTLET



PROBABLE CAUSE

Excessive side pressures on nonreinforce concrete structure. Poor concrete quality.

POSSIBLE CONSEQUENCES

HAZARDOUS Loss of outfall structure exposes embankment to erosion by outlet releases.

RECOMMENDED ACTIONS

1. Check for progressive failure by monitoring typical dimension, such as "D" shown in figure.

2. Repair by patching cracks and supplying drainage around concrete structure. Total replacement of outfall structure may be needed.

Outlet pipe too short. Lack or energydissipating pool or structure at downstream end of conduit.

Trashrack missing or damaged.

is jammed.

wear

HAZARDOUS

Erosion of toe oversteepens downstream slope, causing progressive sloughing.

Gate will not close. Gate or stem may be damaged in effort to close gate.

Gate-leaf main fail completely, evacuating reservoir.

Leakage and loss of support for gate leaf. Gate may bind in guides and become inoperable.

1. A break in the outlet pipe. 2 A path for flow has developed along the outside of the outlet pipe.

Ice action, rust, affect vibration, or stress

resulting from forcing gate closed when it

Rust, erosion, cavitation, vibration, or

HAZARDOUS

Continued flows can lead to raid erosion of embankment materials and failure of the dam.

1. Extend pipe beyond toe (use a pipe of same size and material, and form watertight connection to existing conduit). 2. Protect embankment with riprap over suitable bedding.

Raise and lower gate slowly until debris is loosened and floats past valve. When reservoir is lowered, repair or replace trashrack.

Use valve only in fully open or closed position. Minimize use of valve until leaf can be repair or replaced.

Minimize use of valve until guides/seats can be repaired. If cavitation is the cause, check to see if air vent pipe exist, and is unobstructed.

1. Thoroughly investigate the area by probing and/or shovelling to see if the cause can be determined.

2. Determine if leakage water is carrying soil particles.

3. Determine quantity of flow. 4. If flow increases, or is carrying embankment materials, reservoir level should be lowered until leakage stops.

5. A qualified engineer should inspect the condition and recommend further actions to be taken.

ENGINEER REQUIRED

ć

49 TABLE 6.1 INSTRUMENTATION AND MONITORING GUIDELINES DIRECTORY Table 6.1 lists features to be observed at a dam and the suggested instruments or observation technique to be used. The specific sec-CRACK & JOINT MEAS. (6.3.8) tions of this manual where an instrument or STRESS-STRAIN MEAS. (6.3.10) observation technique is discussed are also indicated. UPLIFT & PORE PRESSURE (6.3.3) SEEPAGE FLOWS (6.3.5) WATER LEVELS & FLOW (6.3.4) WATER QUALITY (6.3.6) VISUAL OBSERVATION (6.3.1) SEISMIC MEAS. (6.3.9) TEMP. MEAS. (6.3.7) MOVEMENTS (6.3.2) MEANS OF PROBLEM DETECTION **FEATURE** EMBANKMENT DAM Upstream Slope Х Downstream Slope Left/Right Abutments Crest Internal Drainage Sys. **Relief Drains** Riprap & Slope Protection **CONCRETE DAMS** Upstream Slope Downstream Slope X Left/Right Abutments X Crest Internal Drain System Relief Drams X Galleries X X Sluiceways/Controls Ý **SPILLWAYS** Approach Channel X Inlet/outlet structure X Stilling Basin X X Discharge conduit/ Channel **Control Features Erosion Protection** Side Slopes **OUTLETS & DRAINS** Inlet/outlet structure Stilling Basin X Å **Discharge** Channel X Irashrack/Debris Control X × **Emergency Systems GENERAL AREAS Reservoir Surface** Mech/elect. systems Shoreline Upstream Watershed Downstream Channel X

CHAPTER 6 INSTRUMENTATION AND MONITORING GUIDELINES

6.0 GENERAL

"Instrumentation of a dam furnishes data to determine if the completed structure is functioning as intended and to provide a continuing surveillance of the structure to warn of any developments which endanger its safety" (ICOLD, 1969).

The means and methods available to monitor phenomena that can lead to dam failure include a wide spectrum of instruments and procedures ranging from very simple to very complex. Any program of dam safety instrumentation must be properly designed and consistent with other project components, must be based on prevailing geotechnical conditions at the dam, and must include consideration of the hydrologic and hydraulic factors present both before and after the project is in operation.

Instruments designed for monitoring potential deficiencies at existing dams must take into account the threat to life and property that the dam presents. Thus, the extent and nature of the instrumentation depends not only on the complexity of the dam and the size of the reservoir, but also on the potential for loss of life and property downstream of the dam.

An instrumentation program should involve instruments and evaluation methods that are as simple and straightforward as the project will allow. Beyond that, the dam owner should make a definite commitment to an ongoing monitoring program or the installation of instruments probably will be wasted.

This chapter discusses deficiencies in dams that may be discovered and the types of instruments that may be used to monitor those deficiencies. Table 6.1 describes deficiencies, their causes and generic means for detecting them Increased knowledge of these deficiencies acquired through a monitoring program is useful in determining both the cause of the deficiency and the necessary remedy. Involvement of qualified personnel in the design, installation, monitoring, and evaluation of an instrumentation system is of prime importance to the success of the program.

6.1 REASONS FOR INSTRUMENTATION

Instrumentation and proper monitoring and evaluation are extremely valuable in determining the performance of a dam. Specific reasons for instrumentation include:

- Warning of a Problem Often, instruments can detect unusual changes, such as water fluctuations in pressure that are not visible. In other cases, gradual progressive changes in say seepage flow, which would go unnoticed visually, can be monitored regularly This monitoring can warn of the development of a serious seepage problem.
- Analyzing and Defining a Problem - Instrumentation data is frequently used to provide engineering information necessary for analyzing and defining the extent of a problem. For example, downstream movement of a dam because of high reservoir water pressure must be analyzed to determine if the movement is uniformly distributed along the dam, whether the movement is in the dam, the foundation, or both. and whether the movement is continuing at a constant, increasing or decreasing rate Such information can then be used to design corrective measures.
- Proving Behavior Is as Expected

 Instruments installed at a dam may infrequently (or even never) show any anomaly or problem However, even this information is valuable because it shows that the dam is performing as designed and provides peace of mind to an owner Also, although a problem may appear to be happeming or imminent, instrument readings might show that the deficiency

52

(say increased seepage) is normal (merely a result of higher than normal reservoir level) and was foreseen in the dam's design.

• Evaluating Remedial Action Performance - Many dams, particularly older dams, are modified to allow for increased capacity or to correct a deficiency Instrument readings before and after the change allow analysis and evaluation of the performance of the modification.

6.2 INSTRUMENT TYPES AND USAGE

A wide variety of devices and procedures are used to monitor dams. The features of dams and dam sites most often monitored by instruments include:

- Movements: (horizontal, vertical, rotational and lateral)
- Pore pressure and uplift pressures
- Water level and flow
- Seepage flow
- Water quality
- Temperature
- Crack and joint size
- Seismic activity
- Weather and precipitation
- Stress and strain

A listing of manufacturers and suppliers for the various instrumentation devices is provided in a report by Dunnicliff (1981). Details of the installation, operation, and maintenance of each device are described in U.S. Bureau of Reclamation (1986)...

6.2.1 Visual observations - As discussed in Chapter 5, visual observations by the dam owner or the owner's representative may be the most important and effective means of monitoring the performance of a dam. The visual inspections should be made whenever the inspector visits the dam site and should consist of a minimum of walking along the dam alignment and looking for any signs of distress or unusual conditions at the dam.

6.2.2 Movements - Movements occur in every dam. They are caused by stresses induced by reservoir water pressure, unstable slopes (low shearing strength), low foundation shearing strength, settlement (compressibility of foundation and dam materials), thrust due to arching action, expansion resulting from temperature change, and heave resulting from hydrostatic uplift pressures. They can be categorized by direction:

• Horizontal Movement - Horizontal or translational movement commonly happens in an upstreamdownstream direction in both embankment and concrete dams. It involves, the movement of an entire dam mass relative to its



Figure 6.1a - Installation of Permanent Points







Figure 6.2 Monitoring Cracks on Embankment

Inclinometer Systems and Plots are Shown in Figure 6.3a-c.



Figure 6.3a - inclinometer—Detail at surface



Figure 6.3c Inclinometer and Casing

abutments or foundation. In an embankment dam, instruments commonly used for monitoring such movement include:

- Extensometers
- Multi-point extensometers
- Inclinometers
- Embankment measuring points
- Shear strips
- Structural measuring points

Installation of simple measuring points is illustrated in Figure 6.1, a and b, a simple crack monitoring system is shown in Figure 6.2, and inclinometer systems and plots are shown in Figure 6.3a-c.

For a concrete dam, instruments for monitoring horizontal movements may include:

- Crack measuring devices
- Extensometers
- Multi-point extensometers
- Inclinometers
- Structural measuring points
- Tape gauges
- Strain meters
- Plumb lines
- Foundation deformation gauges





54

Examples of monitoring of concrete structure movements are shown in Figure 6.4.

- Vertical Movement Vertical movement is commonly a result of consolidation of embankment or foundation materials resulting in settlement of the dam. Another cause is heave (particularly at the toe of a dam) caused by hydrostatic uplift pressures.
 - In an embankment dam, vertical

Figure 6.4 - Measuring Displacements



(d) MORIAR MARKER

movements may be monitored by:

- Settlement plates/sensors
- Extensometers
- Piezometers
- Vertical internal movement devices
- Embankment measuring points
- Structural measuring points
 Inclinometer casing mea-
- surements

In a concrete dam, vertical movement monitoring devices may include:

- Settlement sensors
- Extensometers
- Piezometers
- Structural measuring points
- Foundation deformation gauges
- Rotational Movement Rotational movement is commonly a result of high reservoir water pressure in combination with low shearing strength in an embankment or foundation and may occur in either component of a dam. This kind of movement may be measured in either embankment or concrete dams by instruments such as:
 - Extensometers
 - Inclinometers
 - Tiltmeters
 - Surface measurement points
 - Crack measurement devices
 - Piezometers
 - Foundation deformation gauges
 - Plumblines (concrete only)
- Lateral Movement Lateral movement (parallel with the crest of a dam) is common in concrete arch and gravity dams. The structure of an arch dam causes reservoir water pressure to be translated into a horizontal thrust against each abutment. Gravity dams also exhibit some lateral movement because of expansion and contraction due to temperature changes. These movements may be detected by:
 - Structural measurement points
 - Tiltmeters
 - Extensometers
 - Crack measurement devices
 - Plumblines
 - Strainmeters
 - Stressmeters
 - Inclinometers
 - Jointmeters
 - Thermometers
 - Load cells

6.2.3 Pore pressure and uplift pressure: As discussed in Chapter 2, a certain amount of water seeps through, under, and around the ends of all dams. The water moves through pores in the soil, rock, or concrete as well as through cracks, joints, etc. The pressure of the water as it moves acts uniformly in all planes and is termed pore pressure. The upward force (called uplift pressure) has the effect of reducing the effective weight of the downstream portion of a dam and can materially reduce dam stability. Pore pressure in an embankment dam, a dam foundation or abutment, reduces that component's shearing strength. In addition, excess water, if not effectively channeled by drains or filters, can result in progressive internal erosion (piping) and failure. Pore pressures can be monitored with the following equipment.

- Piezometers electrical open well pneumatic
 - hydraulic porous tube slotted pipe
- Pressure meters & gauges
- Load cells

Simple piezometers may be as illustrated in Figure 6.5, while a basic observation well is shown in Figure 6.6.

6.2.4 Water Level and Flow - For most dams, it is important to monitor the water level in the reservoir and the downstream pool regularly to determine the quantity of water in the reservoir and its level relative to the regular outlet works and the emergency spillway. The water level is also used to compute water pressure and pore pressure; the volume of seepage is usually directly related to the reservoir level. It is also important to establish the normal or typical flow through the outlet works for legal purposes.

Water levels may be measured by simple elevation gauges – either staff gauges or numbers painted on permanent, fixed structures in the reservoir – or by complex water level sensing devices. Flow quantities are often computed from a knowledge of the dimensions of the outlet works and the depth of flow in the outlet channel or pipe. 6.2.5 Seepage flow - Seepage must be monitored on a regular basis to determine if it is increasing, decreasing, or remaining constant as the reservoir level fluctuates. A flow rate changing relative to a reservoir water level can be an indication of a clogged drain, piping, or internal cracking of the embankment. Seepage may be measured using the following devices and methods:

- Weirs (any shape such as Vnotch, rectangular, trapezoidal, etc.)
- Flumes (such as a Parshall flume)
- Pipe methods
- Timed-bucket methods
- Flow meters

Examples of weirs, flumes, and bucket measuring installations are illustrated in Figures 6.7, 6.8, and 6.9.

6.2.6 Water quality - Seepage comes into contact with various minerals in the soil and rock in and around the dam This can cause two problems: the chemical dissolution of a natural rock such as limestone, or the internal erosion of soil.



(TYPICAL)





Figure 6.5 - Porous Stone Piezometer





Dissolution of minerals can often be detected by comparing chemical analyses of reservoir water and seepage water. Such tests are site specific; for example, in a limestone area, one would look for calcium and carbonates, in a gypsum area, calcium and sulfates. Other tests, such as ph can also sometimes provide useful information on chemical dissolution.

Internal erosion can be detected by comparing turbidity of reservoir water with that of seepage water A large increase in turbidity indicates erosion.

6.2.7 Temperature - The internal temperature of concrete dams is commonly measured both during and after construction. During construction, the heat of hydration of freshly placed concrete can create high stresses which could result in later cracking. After construction is completed and a dam is in operation, it is not uncommon for very significant temperature differentials to exist depending on the season of the year. For example, during the winter, the upstream face of a dam remains relatively warm because of reservoir water temperature, while the downstream face of the dam is reduced to a cold ambient air temperature. The reverse is true in the summer. Temperature measurements are important both to determine causes of movement due to expansion or contraction and to compute actual movement. Temperature measurements can be made by using any of several different kinds of embedded thermometers or by making simultaneous temperature readings on devices such as stress and strain meters which provide means for indirectly measuring temperature of the mass.

6.2.8 Crack and joint size - A knowledge of the locations and widths of cracks and joints in concrete dams and in concrete spillways and other concrete appurtenances of embankment dams is important because of the potential for seepage through those openings. Even more, it is important to know if the width of such openings is increasing or decreasing Various crack and joint measuring devices are available, and most allow very accurate measurement Some use simple tape or dial gauges, while others use complex electronics to gain measurements.





Figure 6.9 Bucket and Stopwatch Method

6.2.9 Seismic activity - Seismic measuring devices record the intensity and duration of large-scale earth movements such as earthquakes. Many federal and state dams use these instruments because they are part of the U.S. Geological Survey's network of seismic recording stations. It may or may not be necessary for a private dam to contain any seismic devices depending upon whether it is in an area of significant seismic risk. Seismic instruments can also be used to monitor any blasting conducted near a dam site.

6.2.10 Weather and precipitation -Monitoring the weather at a dam site can provide valuable information about both day-to-day performance and developing problems. A rain gauge, thermometer, and wind gauge can be easily purchased, installed, maintained and monitored at a dam site.

6.2.11 Stress and strain - Measurements to determine stress and/or strain are common in concrete dams and to a lesser extent, in embankment dams. The monitoring devices previously listed for measuring dam movements, crack and joint size and temperature are also appropriate for measuring stress and strain. Monitoring for stress and strain permits very early detection of movement.

6.3 FREQUENCY OF MONITORING

The frequency of instrument readings or making observations at a dam depends on several factors including:

- Relative hazard to life and property that the dam represents
- Height or size of the dam
- Relative quantity of water impounded by the dam
- Relative seismic risk at the site
- Age of the dam
- Frequency and amount of water level fluctuation in the reservoir

In general, as each of the above factors increases, the frequency of monitoring should increase. For example, very frequent (even daily) readings should be taken during the first filling of a reservoir, and more frequent readings should be taken during high water levels and after significant storms and earthquakes. As a rule of thumb, simple visual observations should be made during each visit to the dam and not less than monthly. Daily or weekly readings should be made during the first filling, immediate readings should be taken following a storm or earthquake, and significant seepage, movement, and stress-strain readings should probably be made at least monthly

Table 7.1 lists items to be maintained at a dam and the maintenance tasks to be performed. The specific sections where the main-tenance tasks are discussed are also noted

ŧ

TABLE 7.1 MAINTENANCE GUIDELINES DIRECTORY

tenance tasks are asscussed an	e aiso notea.			~	щ	Ë				Ē	STNE
	H (I	INT.	പ	EPAIF	MAG (2)	AMAC (6)	L	L	(7.3.9)	MAIN	IPONI (L)
	V ОР (7.3	MA		ER	[DA (7.3.	C D∕	IAIN	4AB	Ŭ	TE]	7.3.1
	THY.	AP AP	W.	STC IAG	ENJ AIR	FFIC	≥ H⊖	L.	IN	O)	TÅ₽ L
REQUIRED MAINTENANCE ———	↓ EAR MAI	RIPH & RI (7.3.2	VEG (7.3.3	LIVE DAM (7.3.3	ROD REP,	TRAI REP/	MEC (7.3.7	ELEC (7.3.8	CLE/	CON (7.3.1	MET/ MAIN
FEAIURE	inter og 11.4 all ofterger og			na la cama cama constitui (congressione constitui de con					C. The State of Long To All		<u> </u>
EMBANKMENT DAM	-	a Angeler (191					Ner - son Bra Alex	******			
Upstream Slope	x	x	<u> </u>	— x	<u> </u>				<u> </u>		
Downstream Slope	X		x	<u> </u>		<u> </u>					
Left/Right Abutments	X	×	x	<u>×</u>	<u>×</u>	x					
Crest	X		- x	<u> </u>			· ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••				P4:14 1-11:241
Internal Drainage Sys.			**************************************				1) ************************************	. ann an	10 mar - 10		
Rener Drains							<u> </u>		-x -		 *
Protection	1000m. 11	X		×	- X-	- x				*	
CONCRETE DAMS	Your are an		onne alla alla son	anne ave paling the							
Upstream Slope				- Mart							
Downstream Slope	talan ng samagarangan n							· .			-117-11 Area
Left/Right Abutments	x		- x	<u> </u>		- x				1	
Crest										x	
Internal Drain System		***** • *** **************************								. <u> </u>	
Relief Drains	}						×		x		
Galleries				·	<u> </u>					<u>x</u>	
Siuceways/Controls	and the second se						x	x	- x	x	x
SPILLWAYS	111	va a tia anno analyza		an erona orașe - ado	We a second s		T . DOLL BY YOUR S			V- Vision d	
Approach Channel	x	x	- x	×			**************************************	· ·····			
Inlet/outlet structure						·····		<u> </u>		<u>_</u>	
Stilling Basin							<u> </u>		- x		
Discharge conduit/	×	— × —	x			····			- x		X
Channel	4000 a g				And the second se		7 Million and 4		T	T	Ť
Control Features					·		- x	- x	<u>x</u>	x	x
Erosion Protection	X	X	- x	<u> </u>	X	- x	···	····		*	
Side Slopes	X	X	X	X	×	X				x	
OUTLETS & DRAINS	and the second second	- Marine Marine			ana a ann	ar those a page of		A REAL PROPERTY AND A REAL			
Inlet/outlet structure								x			
Stilling Basin									x		
Discharge Channel				<u> </u>	-x	- x	····		-x		
Irashrack/Debris Control							- x		-x		
Emergency Systems											
GENERAL AREAS	winner (MANN ann)	* and the second se	Martina VANA - surged - su -		an manga na angalang san	-	- Million and a second and as		An you and you are sub-		
Reservoir Surface									x		
Mech/elect systems								- x	-x		- x
Shoreline		X	- X		-X				x		{
Downstream Channel		<u> </u>	X						X		
Lownsu cam Unannei	X	X	<u>.</u>		l	l	<u> </u>		X	-x	Å

59

CHAPTER 7 MAINTENANCE GUIDELINES

7.0 GENERAL

A good maintenance program will protect a dam against deterioration and prolong its life. A poorly maintained dam will deteriorate and can fail. Nearly all the components of a dam and the materials used for dam construction are susceptible to damaging deterioration if not properly maintained. A good maintenance program provides not only protection for the owner, but for the general public as well. Moreover, the cost of a proper maintenance program is small compared to the cost of major repairs, loss of life and property and resultant litigation.

A dam owner should develop a basic maintenance program based primarily on systematic and frequent inspections. Inspections, as noted in Chapter 5, should be done at least monthly and after major flood or earthquake events. During each inspection, a checklist of items calling for maintenance should be used.

7.1 MAINTENANCE PRIORITIES

Maintenance is a task which should never be neglected. If it is, several areas ultimately will need attention -some of greater concern than others. The following outline lists, by relative priority, the various problems or conditions that might be encountered in a deteriorated dam

7.1.1 Immediate maintenance - The following conditions are critical and call for immediate attention:

- A dam about to be overtopped or being overtopped
- A dam about to be breached (by progressive erosion, slope failure, or other circumstances)
- A dam showing signs of piping or internal erosion indicated by increasingly cloudy seepage or other symptoms
- A spillway being blocked or otherwise rendered inoperable, or having normal discharge restricted

• Evidence of excessive seepage appearing anywhere at the dam site (an embankment becoming saturated, seepage exiting on the downstream face of a dam) increasing in volume.

Although the remedy for some critical problems may be obvious (such as clearing a blocked spillway), the problems listed above generally require the services of a Professional Engineer familiar with the construction and maintenance of dams. The emergency action plan (discussed in Chapter 8) should be activated when any of the above conditions are noted.

7.1.2 Required maintenance at earliest possible date - The following maintenance should be completed as soon as possible after the defective condition is noted:

- All underbrush and trees should be removed from the dam, and a good grass cover should be established
- Eroded areas and gullies on embankment dams should be restored and reseeded
- Defective spillways, gates, valves, and other appurtenant features of a dam should be repaired
- Deteriorated concrete or metal components of a dam should be repaired as soon as weather permits

7.1.3 Continuing maintenance -Several tasks should be performed on a continuing basis:

- Routine mowing and general maintenance
- Maintenance and filling of any cracks and joints on concrete dams
- Observation of any springs or areas of seepage
- Inspection of the dam (as discussed in Chapter 5)
- Monitoring of development in the watershed which would materially increase runoff from storms

62

• Monitoring of development downstream and updating the emergency notification plan to include new homes or other occupied structures within the area

7.2 SPECIFIC MAINTENANCE ITEMS

7.2.1 Earthwork Maintenance and Repair - Deterioration of the surfaces of an earth dam may occur for several reasons. For example, wave action may cut into the upstream slope, vehicles may cause ruts in the crest or slopes, or runoff waters may leave erosion gullies on the downstream slope. Other special problems, such as shrinkage cracks or rodent damage, may also occur. Damage of this nature must be repaired on a continuing basis. The maintenance procedures described below are effective in repairing minor earthwork problems. However, this section is not intended to be a technical guide, and the methods discussed should not be used to solve serious problems. Conditions such as embankment slides, structural cracking, and sinkholes threaten the immediate safety of a dam and require immediate repair under the direction of an engineer.

The material selected for repairing embankments depends upon the purpose of the earthwork. Generally, earth should be free from vegetation, organic materials, trash, or large rock. Most of the earth should be fine-grained soils or earth clods which easily break down when worked with compaction equipment. The intent is to use a material which, when compacted, forms a firm, solid mass, free from excessive voids.

If flow-resistant portions of an embankment are being repaired, materials which are high in clay or silt content should be used. If the area is to be free draining or highly permeable (i.e., riprap bedding, etc.) the material should have a higher percentage of sand and gravel. As a general rule, it is usually satisfactory to replace or repair damaged areas with soils similar to those originally in place.

An important soil property affecting compaction is moisture content. Soils which are too dry or too wet do not compact well. One may roughly test repair material by squeezing it into a tight ball. If the sample maintains its shape without cracking and falling apart (which means it is too dry), and without depositing excess water onto the hand (which means it is too wet), the moisture content is probably near the proper level.

Before placement of earth, the repair area must be prepared by removing all inappropriate material. Vegetation such as brush, roots, and tree stumps must be cleared and any large rocks or trash removed. Also, unsuitable earth, such as organic or loose soils, should be removed, so that the work surface consists of exposed firm clean embankment material

Following clean-up, the affected area should be shaped and dressed, so that the new fill can be compacted and will properly tie into the existing fill. If possible, slopes should be trimmed, and surfaces roughened by scarifying or plowing to improve the bond between the new and existing fill and to provide a good base to compact against.

Soils should be placed in loose layers up to 8 inches thick and compacted manually or mechanically to form a dense mass free from large rock or organic material. Soil moisture must be maintained in the proper range. The fill should be watered and mixed to the proper wetness or scarified and allowed to dry if too wet.

During backfilling, care should be taken that fill does not become too wet from rainstorm runoff. Runoff should be directed away from the work area and repair areas should be overfilled so that the fill maintains a crown which will shed water.

As mentioned eariler, occasionally minor cracks will form in an earth dam because of surface drving. These are called dessication (drying) cracks and should not be confused with structural or settlement cracks. Drying cracks are usually parallel to the main axis of the dam, typically near the upstream or downstream shoulders of the crest. These cracks often run intermittently along the length of the dam and may be up to 4 feet deep. Drying cracks can be distinguished from more serious structural cracks because the former are usually no wider than a few inches and have edges that are not offset vertically.

As a precaution, suspected drying cracks should initially be monitored

with the same care used for structural cracks. The problem area should be marked with survey stakes, and monitoring pins should be installed on either side of the crack to allow recording of any changes in width or vertical offset. Once satisfied that observed cracking is the result of shrinkage or drying, an owner may stop monitoring.

However, these cracks will close as climatic or soil moisture conditions change. If they do not, it may be necessary to backfill the cracks to prevent entry of surface moisture which could result in saturation of the dam. The cracks may be simply filled with earth that is tamped in place with hand or tools. It is also recommended that the crest of a dam be graded to direct runoff waters away from areas damaged by drying cracks.

As Chapter 5 suggests, erosion is one of the most common maintenance problems at embankment structures. Erosion is a natural process, and its continuous forces will eventually wear down almost any surface or structure. Periodic and timely maintenance is essential to prevent continuous deterioration and possible failure.

Sturdy sod, free from weeds and brush, is an effective means of preventing erosion. Embankment slopes are normally designed and constructed so that surface drainage will be spread out in thin layers (sheet flow) on the grassy cover. When embankment sod is in poor condition or flows are concentrated at any location, the resulting erosion will leave rills and gullies in the embankment slope. An owner should look for such areas and be aware of the problems that may develop. Eroded areas must be promptly repaired to prevent more serious damage to the embankment. Rills and gullies should be filled with suitable soil (the upper 4 inches should be top soil, if possible,) compacted, and then seeded. A local Soil Conservation Service Officer can be very helpful in selecting the types of grass to use for dam surface protection. Erosion in large gullies can be slowed by stacking bales of hay or straw across the gully until permanent repairs can be made.

Not only should eroded areas be repaired, but the cause of the erosion should be found to prevent a continuing maintenance problem. Erosion might be caused or aggravated by improper drainage, settlement, pedestrian traffic, animal burrows, or other factors. The cause of the erosion will have a direct bearing on the type of repair needed.

Paths due to pedestrian or two-wheel and four-wheel vehicle traffic are a problem on many embankments. If a path has become established, vegetation will not provide adequate protection and more durable cover will be required unless traffic is eliminated. Small stones, asphalt, or concrete may be used effectively to cover footpaths. In addition, railroad ties or other treated wood beams can be embedded into an embankment slope to form an inexpensive stairway.

Erosion is also common at the point where an embankment and the concrete walls of a spillway or other structure meet. Poor compaction adjacent to such a wall during construction and subsequent settlement can result in an area along the wall lower than the grade of the embankment. Runoff, therefore, often concentrates along these structures, resulting in erosion. People also frequently walk along these walls, wearing down the vegetal cover Possible solutions include regrading the area so that it slopes away from the wall. adding more resistant surface protection, or constructing wooden steps.

Adequate erosion protection is also needed along the contact between the downstream face of an embankment and the abutments. Runoff from rainfall can concentrate in gutters constructed in these areas and can reach erosive velocities because of relatively steep slopes. Berms on the downstream face that collect surface water and empty into these gutters add to the runoff volume. Sod-surfaced gutters may not adequately prevent erosion in these areas. Paved concrete gutters may not be desirable either because they do not slow the water and can be undermined by erosion. Also, small animals often construct burrows underneath these gutters adding to the erosion potential.

A well-graded mixture of rocks up to 9 to 12 inches in diameter (or larger) placed on a layer of sand (filter) generally provides the best protection for these gutters on small dams. Riprap slushed with a thin concrete slurry has also been successful in preventing erosion on larger dams and should be used if large stone material is not available. As with erosion around spillways, erosion adjacent to gutters results from improper construction or a poor design in which the finished gutter is too high with respect to adjacent ground. This condition prevents much of the runoff water from entering the gutter. Instead, the flow concentrates along the side of the gutter, erodes and may eventually undermine the gutter.

Care should be taken when replacing failed gutters or designing new gutters to assure that:

- The channel has adequate capacity
- Adequate erosion protection and a satisfactory filter have been provided
- Surface runoff can easily enter the gutter
- The outlet is adequately protected from erosion

7.2.2 Riprap maintenance and repair - A serious erosion problem called "beaching" can develop on the upstream slope of a dam. Waves caused by high winds or high-speed boats can erode the exposed face of an embankment by repeatedly striking the surface just above the pool elevation, rushing up the slope, then tumbling back into the pool. This action erodes material from the face of the embankment and displaces it down the slope, creating a "beach." Erosion of unprotected soil can be rapid and, during a severe storm, could lead to complete failure of a dam.

The upstream face of a dam is commonly protected against wave erosion and resultant beaching by placement on the face of a layer of rock riprap over a layer of filter material. Sometimes, materials such as steel, bituminous or concrete facing, bricks or concrete blocks are used for this upstream slope protection. Protective beaches are sometimes actually built into small dams by placing a berm (8 to 10 feet wide) along the upstream face a short distance below the normal pool level thereby providing a surface on which wave energy can dissipate Generally, however, rock riprap provides the most economical and effective protection

Nonetheless, beaching can occur in existing riprap if the embankment surface is not properly protected by a filter. Water running down the slope under the riprap can erode the embankment. Sections of riprap which have slumped downward are often signs of this kind of beaching. Similarly, concrete facing used to protect slopes may fail because waves wash soil from beneath the slabs through joints and cracks. Detection of this problem is difficult because the voids are hidden and failure may be sudden and extensive. Effective slope protection must prevent soil from being removed from the embankment

When erosion occurs and beaching develops on the upstream slope of a dam, repairs should be made as soon as possible. The pool level should be lowered and the surface of the dam prepared for repair. A small berm or "bench" should be built across the face of the dam at the base of the new layer of protection to help hold the layer in place. The size of the bench needed depends on the thickness of the protective layer.

A riprap layer should extend a minimum of 3 feet below the lowest expected normal pool level. Otherwise, wave action during periods of low lake level will undermine and destroy the protection.

If rock riprap is used, it should consist of a heterogeneous mixture of irregular shaped stone placed over a sand and gravel filter. The largest rock must be large enough in both size and weight to break up the energy of the maximum expected waves and hold smaller stones in place. (An engineer may have to be consulted to determine size.) The smaller rocks help to fill the spaces between the larger pieces and to form a stable mass. The filter prevents soil particles on the embankment surface from being washed out through the spaces between the rocks in the riprap. If the filter material itself can be washed out through these voids and beaching develops, two layers of filters may be required. The lower laver should be composed of sand or filter fabric to protect the soil surface and the upper layer should be composed of coarser materials.

A dam owner should expect some riprap deterioration because of weathering Freezing and thawing, wetting and drying, abrasive wave action and other natural processes will eventually break down the material. Therefore, sufficient maintenance funds should be allocated for the regular replacement of riprap 64

The useful life of riprap varies depending on the characteristics of the stone used. Thus, stone for riprap should be rock that is dense and well cemented. When riprap breaks down, and erosion and beaching occur more often than once every three to five years, professional advice should be sought to design more effective slope protection.

7.2.3 Vegetation maintenance - The entire dam should be kept clear of unwanted vegetation such as brush or trees. Excessive growth may cause several problems:

- It can obscure the surface of an embankment and prevent a thorough inspection of the dam
- Large trees can be uprooted by high wind or erosion and leave large holes, that can lead to breaching of the dam
- Some root systems can decay and rot, providing passageways for water, and thus causing erosion
- Growing root systems can lift concrete slabs or structures
- Weeds can prevent the growth of desirable grasses
- Rodent habitats can develop

When brush is cut down, it should be removed from a dam to permit a clear view of the embankment. Following removal of large brush or trees, the left over root systems should also be removed if possible and the resulting holes properly filled. In cases where they cannot be removed, root systems can be treated with herbicide (properly applied) to retard further growth. After the removal of brush, cuttings may need to be burned. If this is done, dam owners should notify the local fire department, forest service, or other agency responsible for fire control.

If properly maintained, grass is not only an effective means of controlling erosion, it also enhances the appearance of a dam and provides a surface that can be easily inspected. Grass roots and stems tend to trap fine sand and soil particles, forming an erosionresistant layer once the plants are well established. Grass is least effective in areas of concentrated runoff or in areas subjected to wave action.

7.2.4 Livestock control - Livestock should not be allowed to graze on an embankment surface. When soil is wet, they can damage vegetation and destroy the uniformity of the surface. Moreover, livestock tend to walk in established paths and thus can promote severe erosion. Such paths should be regraded and seeded, and the livestock should be permanently fenced out of the area

7.2.5 Rodent damage control -Rodents, such as groundhogs (woodchucks), muskrats, and beavers are naturally attracted to the habitats created by dams and reservoirs and can, by their behavior, endanger the structural integrity and proper performance of embankments and spillways. Groundhog and muskrat burrows can weaken embankments and can serve as pathways for seepage. Beavers can plug a spillway and raise the pool level. Rodent control is essential to the preservation of a dam.

The groundhog is the largest member of the squirrel family. Its coarse fur is a typically grayish brown with a reddish cast. Occupied groundhog burrows are easily recognized in the spring because of the groundhog's habit of keeping them "cleaned out." Fresh soil is generally found at the mouth of such active burrows. Halfround mounds, paths leading from the den to nearby fields, and clawed or girdled trees and shrubs also indicate inhabited burrows and dens.

When burrowing into an embankment, groundhogs stay above the phreatic surface (upper surface of seepage or saturation) to stay dry. The burrow is rarely a single tunnel. It is usually forked, with more than one entrance and with several side passages or rooms from 1 to 12 feet in length

Controls should be implemented during early spring when active burrows are easy to find, young groundhogs have not yet scattered, and there is less likelihood of damage to other wildlife. In summer, fall, and winter, game animals may scurry into groundhog burrows for brief protection and may even take up permanent residence during the period of groundhog hibernation.

Groundhogs can be controlled with fumigants or firearms. Fumigation is the most practical method although around buildings or high fire hazard areas, shooting may be preferable. Gas cartridges for fumigation may be purchased at local farm exchanges, farm supply centers, and many county extension offices. Groundhogs will be discouraged from inhabiting an embankment if the grass cover is kept mowed

The muskrat is a stocky rodent with a broad head, short legs, small eyes, and rich dark brown fur. Muskrats are chiefly nocturnal and can be found wherever there are marshes, swamps, ponds, lakes, and streams having calm or very slowly moving water with vegetation in the water and along the banks.

Barriers, such as properly constructed riprap and filter layers, provide the most practical protection from muskrats by preventing burrowing. As a muskrat tries to construct a burrow, the sand and gravel of a filter layer will cave in and discourage den building. Filter layers and riprap should extend at least 3 feet below water line. Heavy wire fencing laid flat against a slope and extending above and below the waterline can also be effective. Eliminating or reducing aquatic vegetation along a shoreline will also discourage muskrat habitation. Trapping with steel traps is normally the most practical method of removing muskrats that have already inhabited a pond.

The easily recognized beaver, if inhabiting an area around a dam, will try to plug the spillway with their cuttings. Routinely removing the cuttings can alleviate the problem or an electrically charged wire or wires can be placed around the spillway inlet. Beaver may be trapped during the proper season and sometimes a local fur trapper will perform the work at little or no expense to the owner.

Methods of repairing rodent damage depend upon the nature of the damage, but in any case, extermination of the rodent population is the required first step. If the damage consists mostly of shallow holes scattered across an embankment, repair may be necessary to maintain the appearance of the dam, to keep runoff waters from infiltrating the dam, or to discourage rodents from subsequently returning to the embankment. In these cases, tamping of earth into the rodent hole should be sufficient repair. Soil should be placed as deeply as possible and compacted with a pole or shovel handle

Large burrows on an embankment should be filled by mud-packing. This simple, inexpensive method involves placing one or two lengths of metal stove or vent pipe vertically over the entrance of the den with a tight seal between the pipe and den. A mudpack mixture is then poured into the pipe until the burrow and pipe are filled with the earth-water mixture. The pipe is removed and additional dry earth is tamped into the entrance. The mud-pack mixture is made by adding water to a 90 percent earth and 10 percent cement mixture until a slurry of thin cement is attained. All entrances should be plugged with well-compacted earth and vegetation re-established. Dens should be eliminated promptly because one burrow can lead to failure of a dam.

Different repair measures are necessary if a dam has been damaged by extensive small rodent tunneling or by beaver or muskrat activity. In these cases, it may be necessary to excavate the damaged area down to competent soil and repair as described in Section 7.2.1.

Occasionally, rodent activity will result in passages which extend through the embankment that could result in leakage of reservoir water, piping, and, ultimately, failure. In these cases, the downstream end of the tunnel should not be plugged since this will add to the saturation of the dam Tunnels of rodents or ground squirrels will normally be above the phreatic surface with primary entrance on the downstream side of the dam, while those of beaver and muskrat normally exist below or at the water surface with entrance on the upstream slope. If a rodent hole is found that extends through the dam. the best procedure is first to locate the upstream end of the passage. The area around the entrance should be excavated and then backfilled with impervious material. This places a plug or patch at the passage entrance so that reservoir water is prevented from saturating the interior of the dam. This should be considered a temporary repair Excavation and backfilling of the entire tunnel or filling of the tunnel with cement grout are possible long-term solutions, but pressure cement grouting is an expensive and sometimes dangerous procedure. Indeed, pressure exerted during grouting can cause additional damage to the embankment in the form of hydraulic fracturing (an opening of cracks by high pressure grouting). Thus, grouting should be performed only under the direction of an engineer.

7.2.6 Traffic damage control - As mentioned eariler, vehicles driving across an embankment dam can create ruts in the dam crest if the crest is not surfaced with roadway material. The ruts can then collect water and cause saturation and softening of the dam. Other ruts may be formed by vehicles driving up and down a dam face. These ruts can collect runoff and result in severe erosion. Vehicles should be banned from dam slopes and kept out by fences or barricades. Any ruts should be repaired as soon as possible using the methods outlined in Section 7.2.1.

7.2.7 Mechanical maintenance – Proper operation of a dam's outlet works is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of a dam. Release of water from a dam is normally a frequent or ongoing function. However, on some reservoirs used for recreation, fish propagation, or other purposes that do not require continual release of water, an operable outlet provides the only means for the emergency lowering of the reservoir and is therefore, essential for the safety of the dam.

If routine inspection of the outlet works indicates the need for maintenance, the work should be completed as soon as access can be gained. Postponement of maintenance could cause dainage to the installation, significantly reduce the useful life of the structure, and result in more extensive and more costly repairs when finally done. More importantly, failure to maintain an outlet system can lead directly to failure of the dam.

The simplest procedure to insure the smooth operation of outlet gates is to operate all gates through their full range at least once and preferably twice annually. Many gate manufacturers recommend operating gates as often as four times a year. Because operating gates under full reservoir pressure can result in large outlet discharges, gate testing should be scheduled during periods of low storage. If this cannot be done, they should be operated during periods of low stream flow. If large releases are expected, outlets should be tested only after coordinating releases with water administration officials and notifying downstream residents and water users.

Operation of the gates minimizes the buildup of rust in the operating mechanism and therefore, the likelihood of seizure of the operating mechanism. During this procedure, the mechanical parts of the hoisting mechanism — including drive gears, bearings, and wear plates — should be checked for adverse or excessive wear, all bolts, including anchor bolts, should be checked for tightness, worn and corroded parts should be replaced, and mechanical and alignment adjustments should be made as necessary.

The way the gate actually operates should also be noted. Rough, noisy, or erratic movement could be the first signs of a developing problem. The cause of operational problems should be investigated and corrected immediately.

Excessive force should be neither needed nor applied to either raise or lower a gate. Most hoisting mechanisms are designed to operate satisfactorily with a maximum force of 40 pounds on the operating handle or wheel. If excessive force seems to be needed, something may be binding the mechanical system. The application of excessive force may result in increased binding of the gate or damage to the outlet works. If there does seem to be undue resistance, the gate should be worked up and down repeatedly in short strokes until the binding ceases, and/or the cause of the problem should be investigated. Of course, the problem should be corrected as soon as possible to assure the continued operability of the gate.

If a gate does not properly seal when closed, debris may be lodged under or around the gate leaf or frame. The gate should be raised at least 2 to 3 inches to flush the debris, and the operator should then attempt to reclose the gate. This procedure should be repeated until proper sealing is achieved. However, if this problem or any other problem persists, a manufacturer's representative or engineer experienced in gate design and operation should be consulted.

An outlet gate operating mechanism should always be well lubricated in accordance with manufacturer's specifications. Proper lubrication will not only reduce wear in the mechanism, but also protect it against adverse weather. Gates with oil-filled stems (i.e., stems encased in a larger surrounding pipe) should be checked semiannually to assure the proper oil level is maintained. If such mechanisms are neglected, water could enter the encasement pipe through the lower oil seal and could cause failure of the upper and/or lower seals which in turn could lead to the corrosion of both the gate stem and interior of the encasement pipe.

The metal used in gate seats is usually brass, stainless steel, bronze, or other rust-resistant alloys. Older or smaller gates may not be fitted with seats, making them susceptible to rusting at the contact surfaces between the gate leaf and gate frame. Operation of gates should prevent excessive rust buildup or seizure.

For satisfactory operation, a gate stem must be maintained in proper alignment with the gate and hoisting mechanism. Proper alignment and support is supplied by stem guides in sufficient number and properly spaced along the stem. Stem guides are brackets or bearings through which a stem passes. They both prevent lateral movement of the stem and bending or buckling when a stem is subjected to compression as a gate is being closed.

The alignment of a stem should be checked during routine inspections. Alignment may be checked by sighting along the length of the stem, or more accurately by dropping a plumbline from a point near the top of the stem to the other end. The stem should be checked in both an upstream/downstream direction as well as in a lateral direction to ensure straightness. While checking alignment, all gate stem guide anchors and adjusting bolts should be checked for tightness. A loose guide provides no support to the stem and could cause buckling of the stem at that point.

If during normal inspection, the stem appears out of alignment, the cause should be repaired. The gate should be completely lowered and all tension or compression taken off the stem. Any misaligned stem guides should be loosened and made to move freely. The hoisting mechanism should then be operated to put tension on the stem, thereby straightening it, but the gate should not be opened. The affected guides should then be aligned and fastened so that the stem passes exactly through their centers. Many outlet gates are equipped with wedges that hold the gate leaf tightly against the gate frame as the gate is closed, thus causing a tight seal. Through years of use, gate seats may become worn, causing the gate to leak increasingly. If an installation has a wedge system, the leakage may be substantially reduced or eliminated by readjusting the wedges.

Because adjustment of these gates is complicated, inexperienced personnel can cause extensive damage to a gate. Improper adjustment could cause premature seating of the gate, possible scoring of the gate seats, binding of the gate, gate vibration, leakage, uneven closing of the gate, or damage to wedges or gate guides. Thus, only experienced personnel should perform adjustments, and a gate supplier or manufacturer should be consulted to obtain names of people experienced in such work.

Ice can exert great force on and cause significant damage to an outlet gate leaf. Storage levels in a reservoir during winter should be low enough that ice cannot form behind a gate. To prevent ice damage, the winter water level should be significantly higher than the gate if storage is maintained through the winter or, if the reservoir is to remain empty over the winter months, the outlet should be left fully open. If operations call for the water level to move across the gate during the winter, a bubbler or other antiicing system may be needed.

7.2.8 Electrical maintenance -Electricity is typically used at a dam to:

- Provide lighting
- Operate outlet gates
- Operate recording equipment
- Operate spillway gates
- Operate other miscellaneous equipment

It is important that an electrical system be well maintained. Maintenance should include a thorough check of fuses and a test of the system to ensure that all parts are properly functioning. The electrical system should be free from moisture and dirt, and wiring should be checked for corrosion and mineral deposits. Any necessary repairs should be completed immediately, and records of the repair work should be kept. Generators used for auxiliary emergency power must also be maintained. This work includes changing oil, checking batteries and antifreeze

and ensuring that fuel is readily available.

7.2.9 Cleaning - As already suggested, the proper operation of spillways, sluiceways, approach channels, inlet/outlet structures, stilling basins, discharge conduit, dam slopes, trashracks, and debris control devices require regular and thorough debris removal and cleaning. Cleaning is especially important after upstream storms which tend to send more debris into the reservoir.

7.2.10 Concrete maintenance -Also as mentioned, periodic maintenance should be performed on all concrete surfaces to repair deteriorated areas. Concrete deterioration should be repaired immediately when noted; it is most easily repaired in its early stages. Deterioration can accelerate and, if left unattended, can result in serious problems or darm failure. An experienced engineer should be consulted to determine both the extent of deterioration and the proper method of repair.

7.2.11 Metal component maintenance - All exposed, bare ferrous metal on an outlet installation, whether submerged or exposed to air, will tend to rust. To prevent corrosion, exposed ferrous metals must either be painted or heavily greased. If painted, the paint should be appropriate and applied following the paint manfacturer's directions.

When areas are repainted, steps should be taken to assure that paint does not get on gate seats, gate wedges, or gate stems where the stems pass through the stem guides, or on other friction surfaces where paint could cause binding. Heavy grease should be used on surfaces where binding can occur. Because rust is especially damaging to contact surfaces, existing rust should be removed before the periodic application of grease. Table 8.1 is a reference directory of occurrences and emergency actions to be taken if needed.

ĩ

TABLE 8.1 EMERGENCY ACTION GUIDELINES DIRECTORY



level

67

20

CHAPTER 8 EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN GUIDELINES

8.0. THE EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN

Although most dam owners have a high level of confidence in the structures they own and are certain their dams will not fail, history has shown that on occasion dams do fail and that often these failures cause extensive property damage and deaths. A dam owner should prepare for this possibility by developing an emergency action plan which provides a systematic means to:

- Identify emergency conditions threatening a dam
- Expedite effective response actions to prevent failure
- Reduce loss of life and property damage should failure occur

A dam owner is responsible for preparing a plan stating the above purposes and listing actions that the owner, the operating personnel and local government authorities should take. A plan should include sections on:

Purpose: (indicated above) Situation:

8.3)

- A list of problem indicators (see the checklist included in Table
- A summary of communities in the potential inundation zone and flood travel times

- A list of anticipated failure situations that can be used as a guide for appropriate responses such as:
 - Failure pending structure can likely be saved with immediate remedial action
 - Failure imminent structure may possibly be saved with immediate remedial action
 - Failure in progress no chance to save the structure
 - Flooding expected or in progress upstream from the dam site
 - Any other conditions peculiar to this dam

Execution

- A list of remedial actions to prevent failure (see Section 8.2.)
- A plan for notification of downstream communities that allows the greatest possible time to warn and evacuate residents should failure occur and a list of telephone numbers of emergency preparedness officials in each community (There is an important distinction between notification and warning. Notification is the responsibility of the dam owner; he or she must notify community emergency officials of impending failure. These officials must then warn the public and evacuate them from the inundation zone if necessary. Public warning processes need not be fully specified in the dain owners' emergency action plan.)

Resources and Coordinating Instructions:

- A list of those who can be of assistance, related telephone numbers, and radio call signs
- A list of materials for use in remedial action; for example, sandbags, high intensity lighting for night repairs

Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *

A dam owner should make full use of other persons who are concerned with dam safety. Cooperative planning can greatly benefit all parties and result in a more concrete, integrated, plan. People and organizations with whom a dam owner should coordinate emergency planning include:

LOCAL PARTICIPANTS

70

The dam's owners, shareholders, and beneficiaries

- Officials of nearby downstream cities and towns
- Local police, county sheriff
- Local emergency officials
- Local fire department
- County highway department
- Local construction companies
- News media serving the area (radio,
- TV, newspaper)
- Nearby engineering firms
- Professional diving services
- Helicopter services
- Hospital and/or ambulance services

STATE AGENCIES

State Engineers office

- State Engineer Dam Safety Branch Local water commissioner Division engineer
- State office responsible for disaster emergency services State Highway Patrol

Department of highways Department of health

FEDERAL AGENCIES

Bureau of Reclamation

- U.S. Forest Service
- National Park Service
- U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
- Federal Bureau of Investigation Federal Emergency Management
- Agency
- Federal Energy Regulatory Commission

United States Geological Survey

A checklist to assist in the development of an emergency action plan is provided at the end of this chapter. A dam owner should use this list to develop a plan and to update the plan periodically thereafter as conditions change (see Table 8.3).

TABLE 8.2POTENTIAL PROBLEMSAND IMMEDIATE RESPONSE ACTIONS

OVERTOPPING BY FLOOD WATERS

- Open outlet to its maximum safe capacity
- Place sandbags along the crest to increase freeboard and force more water through the spillway and outlet
- Provide erosion-resistant protection to the downstream slope by placing plastic sheets or other materials over eroding areas
- Divert flood waters around the reservoir basin if possible
- Create additional spillway capacity by making a controlled breach in a low embankment or dike section where the foundation materials are erosion resistant

LOSS OF FREEBOARD OR DAM CROSS SECIION DUE IO SIORM WAVE EROSION

- Place additional riprap or sandbags in damaged areas to prevent further embankment erosion
- Lower the water level to an elevation below the damaged area
- Restore freeboard with sandbags or earth and rockfill
- Continue close inspection of the damaged area until the storm is over

SLIDES ON THE UPSIREAM OR DOWNSIREAM SLOPE OF THE EMBANKMENT

- Lower the water level at a rate and to an elevation considered safe given the slide condition. If the outlet is damaged or blocked, pumping, siphoning, or a controlled breach may be required
- Restore lost freeboard if required by placing sandbags or filling in the top of the slide
- Stabilize slides on the downstream slope by weighting the toe area with additional soil, rock, or gravel

EROSIONAL FLOWS IHROUGH IHE EMBANKMENI, FOUNDATION, OR ABUTMENTS

- Plug the flow with whatever material is available (hay bales, bentonite, or plastic sheeting if the entrance to the leak is in the reservoir basin)
- Lower the water level until the flow decreases to a non-erosive velocity or until it stops
- Place a protective sand and gravel filter over the exit area to hold materials in place
- Continue lowering the water level until a safe elevation is reached
- Continue operating at a reduced level until repairs can be made

8.1 IDENTIFICATION OF EMERGENCY CONDITIONS AND INITIATION OF EMERGENCY RESPONSE ACTIONS

As discussed in earlier chapters, a dam owner should observe a dam structure and the dam site on a regular basis. Failure is most often caused by overtopping, water flowing through a dam's key components, and weaknesses in the foundation and outlet works. As discussed in Chapters 5 and 6, a number of indicators can signal the beginning of problems that might cause failure.

At a minimum, a dam owner should include in the "Situation" portion of the plan a reminder to check the history and location of hazards which could lead to overtopping or other acute problems. These are discussed in detail in Chapter 3 and include:

- Earthquakes and active faults
- Flooding, storms, snow melt runoff

1

• Landslides

Reporting a Dam Safety Incident -When reporting a dam incident, all directions for example "left of" or "right from") are from the point of view of an observer facing downstream.

When an "indicator" or dangerous condition appears, a dam owner or responsible agent must take immediate action. If failure is possible, that person should report the situation to state and local dam safety authorities immediately. The report should include:

• The name of the person making the report and how he or she can be contacted
FAILURE OF APPURTENANT STRUCTURES SUCH AS OUTLETS OR SPILLWAYS

- Implement temporary measures to protect the damaged structure, such as closing an outlet or providing temporary protection for a damaged spillway
- Employ experienced professional divers if necessary to assess the problem and possibly implement repair
- Lower the water level to a safe elevation. If the outlet is inoperable, pumping, siphoning, or a controlled breach may be required

MASS MOVEMENT OF THE DAM ON ITS FOUNDATION, (SPREADING OR MASS SLIDING FAILURE)

- Immediately lower the water level until excessive movement stops
- Continue lowering the water until a safe level is reached
- Continue operating at a reduced level until repairs can be made

EXCESSIVE SEEPAGE AND HIGH LEVEL SATURATION OF THE EMBANKMENT

- Lower the water to a safe level
- Continue frequent monitoring for signs of slides, cracking or concentrated seepage

• Continue operation at a reduced level until repairs can be made SPILLWAY BACKCUTTING THREATENING RESERVOIR EVACUATION

- Reduce the flow over the spillway by fully opening the main outlet
- Provide temporary protection at the point of erosion by placing sandbags, riprap materials, or plastic sheets weighted with sandbags
- When inflow subsides, lower the water to a safe level
- Continue operating at a low water level in order to minimize spillway flow
- EXCESSIVE SETTLEMENT OF THE EMBANKMENT
- Lower the water level by releasing it through the outlet or by pumping, siphoning, or a controlled breach
- If necessary, restore freeboard, preferably by placing sandbags
- Lower water to a safe level
- · Continue operating at a reduced level until repairs can be made

LOSS OF ABUIMENT SUPPORT OR EXTENSIVE CRACKING IN CONCRETE DAMS

- Lower the water level by releasing it through the outlet
- Implement notification procedures
- Attempt to block water movement through the dam by placing plastic sheets on the upstream face
- Lowering water to a safe level
- The name of the dam, lake or reservoir, and river, stream, or tributary the dam is located on
- The location of the dam by the nearest highways, roads or towns and by township and section, and range and principal meridian, if known
- A description of the problem (for example, excessive leakage, cracks, sand boils, slides, wet spots, etc.)
- The location of the problem area on the dam relative to embankment height (for example, "about 1/3 up from the toe") and relative to the dam's crest (for example, 100 feet to the right of the outlet or abutment) and in terms of what part of the dam is actually affected (for example, upstream slope, crest, or downstream slope)

- A description of the extent of the problem area
- An estimate of the quantity of unusual flow as well as a description of flow quality (clear, cloudy, muddy)
- A reading of the water level in the reservoir relative to the dam's crest, spillway and/or the gauge rod
- An indication of whether the water level is rising or falling
- An indication of whether the situation appears to be worsening
- An indication of whether the problem appears to be containable or is an emergency
- The current weather conditions at the site
- Anything else that seems important

A reporting form is included in Appendix B of this manual. Owners should use it as a guide and supplement it with additional site-specific details.

Additionally, the items on the report form should be periodically reviewed by owners and operators who frequently visit the dam site. An up-todate report form and accurate report will permit intelligent assessment of a problem situation and proper implementation of an emergency action plan.

Immediate Response Actions -Response actions should be listed in the "Execution" section of the emergency action plan according to the problem or indicators being addressed (as in Table 8.2).

8.2 GUIDELINES FOR EMERGENCY NOTIFICATION

An essential part of the "Execution" Section of an emergency action plan is a list of agencies/persons to be notified in the event of a potential failure Names for this list should be obtained from and coordinated with local law enforcement agencies and local disaster emergency services offices. The list should include key people or agencies who can activate warning and evacuation procedures for the public or who might be able to assist a dam owner in delaying or preventing failure. The following agencies can offer emergency assistance if failure of a dam appears imminent:

- Local sheriff, police, and/or fire departments
- Local disaster emergency agency
- County engineer
- State department responsible for dam safety
- State disaster emergency services office

A copy of the notification list should be posted in a prominent, accessible location at the dam -- near a telephone and/or radio transmitter, if possible. It should be periodically (once or twice a year) verified and updated as necessary. It should include individual names and titles, locations, office and home telephone numbers, and radio frequencies and call signals if appropriate. Special procedures should be developed for nighttime, holiday, and weekend notification and for notification during a severe storm when telephones

72

may not be working or highways may be impassable.

The notification element of an emergency action plan should be brief, simple, and easy to implement under any conditions. Notification of impending failure is the first step in the process that leads to public warning. A dam owner should be careful to quickly notify the key official responsible for warning and evacuating the public. Normally, this is the county sheriff or city police chief. Notification of that official is the clear responsibility of the dam owner who should know the roles and responsibilities of both the official and the agency that will carry out public safety actions. Often, if a reservoir is large, the potential inundation zone will extend for many miles, and failure will threaten several communities and counties. A dam owner should include the proper official for each jurisdiction in the notification plan, so all can be notified as quickly as possible, (use position titles for officials so that the plan does not require updating every time a person changes jobs).

Certain key information must be included in every notification plan including information about potential inundation areas and travel times for the breach (flood) wave. Inundation maps showing potential areas of flooding from a dam failure are especially useful in local warning and evacuation planning. Detailed information about the identification of inundation zones and the development of maps can be found by contacting a state engineer's office or local planning office.

TABLE 8.3 CHECKLIST FOR DAM EMERGENCY PLANS

I. Development of Plan

- A. Overview: Use format suggested in paragraph 8.0.
 - 1. Are reporting procedures clear in showing what data must be collected and what information should be reported?
 - 2 Are terms in the plan defined so that users will have no questions about the nature of the situation?
 - a failure vs impending failure
 - b. emergency situation vs. potential problem
 - c. rapidly vs. slowly developing situation
- **B** Problem Identification
 - 1. Are all indicators of potential failure covered in the plan?
 - a. Slumping/sloughing
 - b. Erosion
 - c Riprap displacement
 - d Slides on dam or abutment
 - e. Increased amount of seepage
 - f. Cloudy or dirty seepage g. Boils
 - h Piping
 - i. Whirlpools (vortices)
 - j Settlement
 - k Cracks
 - 1. Bogs
 - m Sinkholes
 - n Abnormal instrumentation readings
 - o. Failure of operating equipment
 - Water in the intake tower
 - q Other

р.

- 2 Are all emergency situations covered in the plan?
 - a earthquakes
 - b. floods
 - c. storms
 - d. massive landslides
 - e volcanic eruptions
 - f. fires
 - g. civil disturbance
 - h sudden water releases
 - i other potential disasters
- 3. Does the problem identification section list all the possible locations of a problem?
- 4. Are the above elements, indicators and events sufficently defined so that the user can understand them?

- 5. Does the plan identify the cause of the problem?
- 6. Can the user ascertain the seriousness of the problem? (i.e., when the problem becomes an emergency)
- 7 Can the user determine what action is needed?
- 8. Can the user ascertain exactly when to notify local officials and which local officials to notify depending on the nature of the problem?
- 9. Can the user determine what equipment or supplies are needed for each type of problem?
- 10 Does the format of the plan easily link problem identification with the action to take, notification to make, and equipment and supplies to use?
- 11. Does the plan include a list of historical problems or most common problems for the type of dam in question?
- C. Notification
 - 1. Does the plan contain a list of key agency personnel and show:
 - a their office and 24-hour telephone number
 - b. the name of their alternate
 - c. which officials to call first
 - d responsibilities of the officials
 - 2. Does the plan show the dam tender or project manager's responsibility in the event of a total loss of communications?
 - 3. Does the plan's format allow the user to find the name of the primary contacts quickly? Has the order of notification been prioritized?
 - 4. Does the plan's list of local officials in charge of evacuation include:
 - a office and 24-hour telephone number
 - b. names of alternates
 - c which officials should be contacted first
 - d. at what point officials should be called
 - e how messages should be worded

- 5. Does the plan describe the communication system?
 - a. under normal conditions
 b. when backup is necessary
 - c. Are radio call numbers and frequencies included ______ for own radios ______ for those to be notified
- 6. Does the plan include procedures for downstream notification?
 - a. downstream operators
 - b. other dams
 - c industries
 - d other agencies
 - e. recreational users
- D. Local Coordination
 - 1. Was the development of the plan coordinated with local officials?
 - a did agencies contribute
 - b. was the plan integrated into the local plan
 - 2. Do inundation maps provide sufficient information and explanation?
 - a is language understandable
 - b. are terms explained
 - c. is map usage explained
 - d are criteria explained
 - e is travel time shown
 - f. are hazardous elevations shown
 - g is flood plain information available

E Resources

- 1. Are resources adequately identified? Does the plan indicate how to locate emergency equipment?
 - a. are equipment and sources specifically described with the contact name and telephone number included
 - b. are supplies and suppliers specifically described with the name of the contact and telephone number included
 - are repair material and erosion protection material described
 - d are memos of understanding to share resources with government entities described

F. Review

- 1. Was there a comprehensive review of the plan at the time it was developed? Was it:
 - a. technically accurate
 - b. workable
 - c. in compliance with criteria
 - d. sufficiently comprehensive
 - e presented effectively

II Implementation of Plan

A. Local Coordination

- 1. Were emergency plans (including notification lists and inundation maps) sent to all appropriate officials? Is the list maintained?
- 2 Have local officials had a briefing or other explanation of the plan? Is a record of such briefing maintained? Did the briefing explain:
 - a basic project data
 - b. maps
 - c. communication networks
 - d points of contact
 - e notification procedures
- 3. Have effective lines of communication for critical conditions been set up?
- 4. Have the dam owner and local officials agreed on their relationship, roles and responsibilities during a dam failure. Is the agreement in writing?
- 5 Has the dam owner reviewed local evacuation plans and discussed them with local officials?
- B Training
 - 1. Has a plan for exercising the plan been developed?
 - 2. Have exercises been conducted? Is a schedule of exercises maintained?
 - 3. Have the following elements of the plan been exercised?
 - a problem identification
 - b emergency scenarios
 - c notification of dam owner and operating staff
 - d notification of others
 - e communication system
 - f. resource list
 - 4. Were all appropriate personnel involved in the test?
 - a owner's personnel
 - b. dam safety personnel
 - c maintenance personnel
 - d support staff
 - e local officials
 - f. contractors and suppliers

- C. Personnel and Resource Readiness
 - 1 Are all appropriate employees familiar with the emergency action plan?
 - 2. Do all appropriate employees have access to the plan?
 - 3 Have all appropriate personnel received training in the following?
 - a how to use the plan
 - b. identifying a problem
 - c. identifying the severity of a problem
 - d using the communication equipment
 - e using the notification subplan
 - f. overall dam safety
 - 4 Are key personnel available 24 hours a day?
 - 5. Is the division of personnel into emergency response teams appropriate?
 - 6 Do employees understand their roles during emergencies?
 - 7. Do key employees have access to the dam during emergencies?
 - 8 Are resources ready?
 - a equipment
 - b. list of contractors
 - c. supplies on hand or readily available

D. Updating and Reviewing

- 1 Is the plan reviewed at least annually?
- 2 Are notification procedures regularly updated?
 - a names and telephone numbers of key staff
 - b. names and telephone numbers of local officials
 - c. names and telephone numbers of contractors
- 3. Is the plan reviewed to make sure that:
 - a exercises are conducted
 - b. personnel are trained
 - c communication equipment is maintained
 - d other equipment is maintained
 - e the downstream warning system is in place and operational
 - f. any new problems are included
 - g inundation maps are still current

CHAPTER 9 OPERATIONS GUIDELINES

9.0 GENERAL

An operations plan details each of the safety program components outlined in Chapter 4, and detailed in Chapters 5 through 8 The extent of an operations plan depends on the complexity of the dam itself -- factors such as dam size, number and type of appurtenances and operating mechanisms.

The operation of a dam may involve adjusting the reservoir level, controlling debris by opening and closing valves, keeping records, and, in general, ensuring public safety Proper operation procedures is extremely important for maintaining a safe structure. Many small dams do not need a full-time operator, but should be checked regularly. Special operational procedures to be followed during an emergency should be posted, particularly if the owner/operator is not always available.

9.1 OPERATIONS PLAN GUIDELINES

Establishing an operations procedure or plan calls for detailed documentation of the following:

- Dam and reservoir physical characteristics data
- Descriptions of dam components (Chapter 2)
- Operations instructions for operable mechanisms (Chapter 9)
- Inspection guidelines (Chapter 5)
- Instrumentation and monitoring guidelines (Chapter 6)
- Maintenance operations guidelines (Chapter 7)
- Emergency operations guidelines (Chapter 8)
- Bibliographical information (Appendix D)

As recommended in Chapter 4, collection and review of existing information on the dam design, construction and structural characteristics is the first step in developing a dam safety program. Guidelines for inspections, monitoring, maintenance, and emergency action planning are presented in the other indicated chapters.

The operation plan should have several seperate sections:

- Section A: Background Data
 - 1. Vital dam statistics

2 Description of appurtenances Section B: Operations Instructions and Records

- 1. Operating instructions for operable mechanisms
- 2. Inspection instructions and forms
- 3 Monitoring instructions and forms
- Maintenance instructions and forms
- 5. Biblography
- 6. Telephone list

Section C: Emergency Warning System

Sections A and B are described briefly below and a schedule of routine tasks is included. Instructions are included for frequent inspections, monitoring, and follow-up maintenance. The Emergency Warning System plan is discussed in Chapter 8.

9.1.1 Background Data

1. Vital dam statistics include:

a. General

- Type of dam
- Height of dam
- Length of crest
- Width of crest
- Angle of upstream slope
- Angle of downstream slope
- Available freeboard
- Capacity tables for reservoir
- Top of dam elevation
- Capacity tables of inflow and outflow works
- County location
- Township location
- Stream name
- Year completed
- Hazard classification

76

- b. Spillway
 - Type of spillway
 - Length of spillway
 - Spillway channel elevation
 - Normal pool elevation
 - Available freeboard
 - Maximum observed flow and date of occurrence
 - Discharge tables for spillway
- c. Outlet
 - Size, configuration and type of outlet
 - Size and type of outlet control device
 - Discharge tables for outlet
 - Inlet invert elevation
 - Outlet invert elevation
 - Drainage systems and drain locations

9.1.2 Operations Instructions and Records

Operating instructions for operable mechanisms - The plan should provide complete, clear, step-by step instructions for operating all mechanisms associated with a dam including the outlet control valve and spillway gates. Proper sequences should be emphasized and sketches. drawings, and photographs to aid in identifying specific handles, cranks, buttons, etc should be included. The correct method of opening and closing guard gates, gate usage during low and high flow, openings at which excessive vibrations are experienced, and operating problems peculiar to a specific gate should also be listed. For hydraulic and electric gates, a schematic diagram should be provided showing each component (including back-up equipment) and its place in the operating sequence.

Instructions on the general operation of the reservoir, including the regulation of inflow and outlet ditches, should be given. These should state the maximum pool levels to be allowed at different times of the year, maximum and/or minimum carry over storage, maximum and/or minimum permissible outlet releases. They should also describe operation of the outlet to limit or prevent excessive spillway flow, and the method for periodic drainage of the reservoir to permit thorough outlet or upstream slope inspection.

Inspection and instrumentation - A clear, step-by-step set of instructions for conducting a comprehensive

inspection of the dam and its surroundings should also be provided. Forms, for recording data such as those in Appendix A, should be used and copies of all completed inspection records should be kept.

Monitoring instructions - Clear instructions on how to use monitoring instruments and how to take measurements at monitoring points should be prepared, a map identifying each instrument and monitoring point should be included, and forms for recording the data should be provided. The monitoring points themselves, plus any seepage or other areas needing special attention should be kept clear of obscuring growth and be permanently marked, so they can be found during inspection. The help of a qualified engineer will be useful in developing this section

Monitoring can only be beneficial if the observations are recorded in an orderly way and form a clear performance record. Thus, plotting or charting some of the readings will be necessary. Instructions on how to make and record each measurement or observation must be provided. If the owner's engineer is not going to plot or chart the data, instructions and forms should be developed to allow owners, operators, or maintenance personnel to do this work. An experienced consulting engineer may be helpful in preparing the needed formats.

Maintenance instructions - Instructions for performing periodic maintenance should be given in detail, so that new personnel can understand the task and experienced personnel can verify that they have completed the work properly All needed maintenance work should be identified and listed. This list includes the tasks described in Chapter 7 such as:

- 1. Removing brush and trees
- 2. Removing debris
- 3. Regrading the crest and/or access roads
- 4. Removing harmful rodents
- 5. Operating and lubricating gates
- 6. Adding riprap when needed
- 7. Sealing joints in concrete facings
- 8. Cleaning drainpipes and outlets
- 9. Maintaining monitoring points
- 10. Maintaining security of operating equipment

Bibliography - All available reference material should be cataloged in a single list. Other title, author or agency responsible for publication, date and place of publication or brief description, and the permanent location of the material (for example filing cabinet in basement) should be included. Even materials without titles or authors, such as photographs and maintenance information, should be listed.

Telephone List - A comprehensive up-to-date listing of important telephone numbers should be maintained and include:

- The owner/operator (home and office) phones
- Employees actively involved with the dam
- The local emergency management agency
- State police
- The local police and fire departments
- The state agency responsible for dam safety
- Qualified local engineering consultants
- Downstream residents

9.2 SCHEDULE OF ROUTINE TASKS

A schedule should be established that includes both day-to day tasks and tasks performed less frequently during the year. Such a schedule serves to formalize inspection and maintenance procedures and makes it easy to determine when a task should be done. As suggested in Table 9.1, The frequency of a required task is often dependent upon the hazard classification of the dam (See Chapter 3).

9.3 RECORD KEEPING

As already suggested, operating a dam should include keeping accurate records of:

- 1. Observations: All observations should be recorded. Periodic observation of seepage is particularly important. Again, photographs are valuable for recording observations and documenting changes.
- 2. *Maintenance*: Written records of maintenance and major repairs are important for evaluating the safety of a dam.

3. Rainfall and Water Levels: A record of the date, time, and maximum elevation of extremely high water and associated rainfall or runoff is especially helpful in evaluating the performance of a dam and its spillway system. In particular, records should be kept for reservoirs that have widely fluctuating water levels.

÷

- 4. Drawdown: A record should be kept of the amount, rate, and reason for pool level drawdown.
- 5. Other Procedures: A complete record of all operating procedures should be maintained.

	Category 1 High Hazard	Category 2 Significant	Category 3 Low Hazard
Frequency	Many lives lost, Excessive damage	Few lives lost, Appreciable damage	No lives lost, Minimal damage
(Minimum)			±
Daily	Surveillance.	<u></u>	
Weekly	Monitor seepage.	Surveillance.	_
Monthly	Collect and examine observation well data	Collect and examine observation well data.	Surveillance. Monitor seepage. Collect and examine observation well data.
Quarterly	Inspect visually	Inspect visually.	—
Bi annually	Test outlet and spillway components.	_	
Annually	Inspection by engineer. Check alignments and movements.	Inspection by engineer. Test outlet and spill- way components. Check alignments and movements.	Visual inspection Test outlet.
As required	Routine maintenance and additional inspections.	Routine maintenance and additional inspections	Routine maintenance and additional inspections. Check alignments and movements.
Immediately after floods and earth- quakes	Additional inspections.	Additional inspections.	Additional inspections

TABLE 9.1 OPERATION PLAN SCHEDULE OF ROUTINE TASKS Hazard Classifications

CHAPTER 10 REDUCING THE CONSEQUENCES OF DAM FAILURE

10.0 SUPPLEMENTS TO A DAM SAFETY PROGRAM

This manual has stressed safety as both a fundamental need and a prime responsibility of the dam owner. Developing an effective dam safety program is the single most important measure a dam owner can take to reduce the possibility or consequences of dam failure. However, on a national scale, an acceptable level of dam safety is still far from being achieved Losses are continuing to increase and may intensify as population growth and migration continue. From both the perspective of the nation and the dam owner, other steps must be taken to reduce loss of life and property and subsequent liability.

Liabilities which are determined following a dam failure strongly affect both organizations and people, governments and dam owners. Determination of liability is the legal means developed by society to recover damages due to a "wrong" (in this case, lack of dam safety) and is another aspect of the dam safety problem A thorough understanding of this legal process can help the dam owner decide the steps to be taken to reduce liability.

A discussion of liability and its relation to a dam owner is presented below, followed by a discussion of three important measures beyond that of individual dam safety that dam owners can promote to reduce liability -- the use of insurance, the provision of governmental assistance, and the use of consultants.

10.1 LIABILITY

The following discussion reviews general principles concerning liability and the operation of reservoirs. Liability in specific instances, however, very much depends upon the dam, the accident, the owner and the jurisdiction in which the reservoir is located.

The liability of an owner of a reservoir is considered general civil

("tort") liability, A tort is simply a civil wrong for which an injured party may recover damages from the responsible party. In most circumstances, simply causing damage is not sufficient basis for the imposition of liability. Negligence must accompany the injury before liability is incurred However, negligence is not a fixed concept; it has been modified and changed by court decisions over the years. In simplest terms, it has been described as the violation of a duty to act as a reasonable and prudent person would act; a violation which directly results in damage to another

The questions of what "duty" is imposed by society and what standard of reasonable care is imposed by the duty have undergone enormous scrutiny and changes over the past 25 years. In many instances the duty to make a product safe or the duty to insure that one's property does not pose a danger to others, has been significantly increased.

While the concept of negligence has been substantially broadened, changes in the limits of negligence do not directly affect dam owners because a separate basis of liability has long been imposed upon them. This standard is one of "strict liability." Strict liability is not based upon fault or negligence, rather it is based solely upon resulting damage, regardless of fault. Strict liability is generally applied to those activities which are deemed "ultra-hazardous" and not capable of being rendered reasonably safe.

The whole concept of strict liability was first established in a case involving a reservoir -- the 1866 English case, Fletcher vs. Rylands, L.R. 1, Ex. 265 A reservoir was built in the vicinity of abandoned coal mines; the water from the reservoir found its way into the abandoned shafts and from there into active shafts and caused damage Under present legal thought, the basis of liability for such an occurrence may well be negligent design (i.e., failure to adequately 80

investigate the surrounding circumstances at the time the reservoir was built). However, in the actual decision, it was assumed that no one could have known the abandoned mine shafts existed and specifically decided that the owner was not negligent. Nonetheless, the English Court established the concept of strict liability for reservoir owners, and the owner of the reservoir was found to be liable for the escape of water from the reservoir regardless of fault

Fletcher vs. Rylands has subsequently been adopted by most U.S. courts and has been cited when similar circumstances are considered. It is the basis for imposing liability on the owner of a reservoir for all damages caused, regardless of fault and without need to prove negligence.

Thus, with a very limited number of exceptions, the general statement of liability for the owner or operator of a reservoir is: intentional acts by third parties which the owner could not protect against or anticipate were a viable defense to strict liability.

Still, where there is no remedial legislation, the circumstances in which a reservoir owner is not liable for all damages caused by the leaking or breaking of his dam are severely limited.

While the standard of liability imposed on a reservoir owner affords extremely limited relief, several states have enacted legislation which limits, in certain circumstances liability for damages. In many other states, by statute or common law, the owner of a reservoir is entitled to utilize (i.e., release water to) the "normal high water line" of a stream without incurring liability for property damaged within the "normal" flood area. However, the definition of the limits within which no liability is imposed vary from place to place and may not be clearly designated on maps. Nonetheless, the right to util-

"IF WATER ESCAPES FROM A DAM, REGARDLESS OF FAULT, THE OWNER IS RESPONSIBLE FOR ALL DAMAGES SUSTAINED."

It should be noted however, that all of the discussion concerning compensation for damages due to release of water from a reservoir deal solely with water that has previously been stored. In all circumstances to date, and in most states by specific statute, a reservoir owner may pass on all natural flood waters without incurring any liability downstream.

Strict liability has two relatively narrow exceptions: acts of God, or intentional acts of third parties, over whom the owner had no control. While acts of God are recognized as a defense, this does not include all natural occurrences over which the owner had no control, but is more narrowly limited to those events over which the owner had no control and also which the owner could not, using available expertise, have anticipated. The other exception -- intentional acts of third parties -- was established by the Wyoming Supreme Court in the Wheatland case. The Wheatland Irrigation District asserted that their reservoir had been damaged by saboteurs, and the Wyoming Supreme Court recognized that illegal, ize defined or "historic" floodplain regions downstream of a reservoir can provide substantial relief from strict liability for a reservoir owner.

With the recent insurance crisis and soaring liability insurance rates, many states are considering legislation which would limit either the basis of liability or the amount of liability that can be imposed on a reservoir owner. Some states, for example, are considering legislation which would change the standard of liability for a reservoir owner from a standard of "strict liability" to one of proven negligence

If coupled with a redefinition of negligent actions, statutory modification of the basis of a reservoir owner's liability could have a significant effect. However, as noted above, the trend during the past 25 years has been to broaden, not narrow, the scope of negligent behavior by imposing broad expectations of prudence and foresight. Even if standards of "strict liability" are replaced by standards of "negligence," in the case of a reservoir owner, because the criteria of reasonable care and foresight are broadly interpreted, the change may not greatly affect the actual standard of liability imposed

In summary, existing law holds a reservoir owner to the highest standard of care. Pending legislation may limit liability in certain circumstances, however the general statement remains unchanged: the owner is liable for all damages caused by water escaping from a reservoir -- despite the best efforts of the owner

10.2 MEASURES TO REDUCE THE CONSEQUENCES OF DAM FAILURE

A dam owner can directly and indirectly influence the introduction and use of a variety of measures that will reduce the consequences of dam failure Insurance can be purchased thus, spreading costs from a single dam owner to others. Land use measures, although difficult to institute, can be an even better means of mitigating future disasters. (If people are restricted from living in inundation zones, safety is obviously radically improved) Increasing public awareness and governmental planning are also measures that can reduce the consequences of dam failure

A dam owner can obtain insurance directly and should do so. The other measures discussed here: land use, public awareness and preparedness planning, are essentially controlled by local governments. Therefore, dam owners would be wise to to encourage as strongly as possible awareness and action in the public sector. Finally, a dam owner may also wish to hire consultants from the private sector when the information needed for prudent decisions exceeds their expertise.

10.2.1 Insurance - Insurance can provide liability and asset protection and thus, is important for dam owners. In many states a minimum level of insurance coverage is mandated by law; in others it is not. In either case, the level of insurance carried should be based on: state law, value of facilities at risk, potential downstream impacts, condition and age of the dam, likelihood of an incident occurring and the cost of available of insurance Insurance spreads risk among a large group of people and can not only provide protection for the person or organization owning the dam, but also for employees and

governing boards who may be held personally liable. Types of coverage, availability and cost will vary from time to time, so it is, advisable to seek professional advice when considering the purchase of insurance Some insurance companies and brokers specialize in issues related to dam failure. Recommendations of insurers can normally be obtained from insurance industry representatives or from the state agency responsible for dam safety. Not only can damage and liability be covered, the cost of business interruption, lost income, and workmen's compensation can also be provided.

Insurance can spread and reduce potential loss and as such should be an accepted cost of doing business. Many persons have avoided this cost and have paid severely for their shortsightedness.

10.2.2 Governmental assistance -One of the fundamential functions of government is to protect citizens from threats to their health, safety, and general welfare. Reducing the consequences of dam failure is clearly a duty of federal, state and local governments which have joint and separate responsibilities to the public concerning dam safety.

Land use planning, public awareness programs, and emergency preparedness planning are typically conducted at the local level – the level of government most immediate and responsive to the dam owner. Federal agencies have technical expertise and can normally provide technical assistance when requested, but ultimately, each state is responsible for its own dam safety program.

Local government roles - Population settlement pattern and population growth strongly affect the costs of dam failures More simply, if no one were allowed to settle in hazardous areas, few, if any, lives would be lost and little property damaged Conversely, as settlement continues near dams and in inundation zones, the potential for disaster increases commensurately "Low-hazard" dams are continually being transformed into "significant hazard" and "high hazard" dams as this settlement continues Increased losses are inevitable unless significant land use measures are enacted to restrict the use of land in inundation zones. The strategies used will reflect federal, state, and local efforts, but local government must make the critical

decisions and only rely on state and federal government for support. All elements of mitigation planning are based upon or affected by the way in which the affected land is used.

If the land has not been developed, the establishment of open space areas in potential inundation zones is a particularly effective way to reduce future costs of dam failure. Indeed, this is the best mitigation strategy to reduce future loss. Despite this utility, organized programs or strategies of land acquisition or settlement restriction exist in few states -usually because of strong opposition among developers and land owners.

If land is already under development, zoning measures to limit high population density can be useful. Also, the establishment of "green areas" parks or golf courses — can be low cost means of limiting settlement in inundation zones. In some fully developed areas, flood proofing devices (walls, barriers) may prove useful.

In much of the nation, land has already been developed and residential construction in inundation zones is already in place People that live in such areas may have a false sense of security and not be aware that a hazard even exists.

Experience has clearly shown that simple warning and evacuation procedures can save a significant number of lives. Table 10.1 demonstrates this success and the corresponding failure when early detection and warning are not available. Clearly, communities downstream from a dam should establish an early notification and warning system. The stimulation of public awareness of this hazard and the development of warning and evacuation plans is clearly the responsibility of local government. The utility of such efforts cannot be overlooked; the aggregate return will be large over the long term.

Existing levels of awareness vary across the nation. Some people are fully aware of their exposure to this hazard while many do not even realize that they reside in an inundation zone. Obviously, tourists are usually less aware than permanent residents; camp grounds for example, are not normally posted with signs that point out the existence of a dam hazard. Clearly, awareness is the first step in mitigating the hazard and increasing safety.

Thus, counties, cities, towns and smaller unincorporated communities urgently need:

- To develop programs to increase awareness of existing dam failure hazards, and more specifically, of who is in danger,
- To develop plans for warning and evacuating the population,
- Io increase public familiarity with plans through publications, well publicized exercises and other means.

Usually, a public awareness program will be well received and generate confidence in government. Media -television, and newspapers -- radio are potentially the most effective way to educate people. Dam owners should encourage public awareness as well as warning and evacuation planning.

ļ

Comparison of warning success for selected dam failures and flash floods

Event	Early direction & warning	Potential loss of life	Actual loss of life	Fatality rate (%)
Big Thompson, Colo. (Flash Flood)	No	2,500	139	5.6
Laurel Run Dam, Pa	No	150	39	25.0
Kelly Barnes Dam, Ga	No	200	39	20.0
Buffalo Creek, W. Va	Some	4,000	125	3.1
Teton Dam, Idaho	Yes	35,000	11	<0.1
Southern Conn. June 1982 (20 dams failed)	Yes	Unknown	0	0
Lawn Lake, Colo.	Yes	4,000	3	<0.1
D.M.A.D, Utah	Yes	500	1	0.2

Source: Graham, 1983

State government roles - Most state governments have actively attempted to reduce the possibility of and consequences of dam failure through any of several major programs.

While some local public and private organizations may capable of supervising dam safety, the authority and responsibility for such measures rest with state agencies that approve plans and specifications for the design and construction of dams, and conduct of inspections of existing dams. In most states, dam safety is monitored by the department of water resources, state engineer's office, or an equivalent agency in the executive branch of government These agencies often determine the rules and regulations governing the design, construction, and maintenance of dams.

The state office of emergency preparedness is also concerned with dam safety. However, it deals mainly with planning for the protection of people - awareness, warning and evacuation planning. Disaster (including dam failure) response and recovery efforts are part of this program.

Federal government roles - The Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) develops and maintains guidelines for dam safety policy, as well as programs for preparedness, emergency response and recovery planning and mitigation planning. FEMA coordinates all federal dam safety programs, and otherwise promotes both federal and nonfederal programs to reduce the hazard posed by unsafe dams.

The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (FERC) supervises the dam safety program mandated by the Federal Power Act. It issues rules and regulations to ensure that licensed projects are adequately constructed, operated and maintained to protect life, health and property. FERC's jurisdiction includes dams at hydroelectric projects on navigable streams or on federally owned land projects using surplus water or waterpower from federally owned dams; and dams affecting interstate or foreign commerce. The Department of the Army, Corps of Engineers, is authorized by the Federal Water Pollution Control Act of 1972 and the River and Harbor Act of 1899 to issue permits for work involving the nation's waterways. Under the National Dam Safety Act of 1972, the Corps, working with individual states, inventoried 68,153 dams, inspected 8,818, and established a list of hazard criteria.

Five agencies within the Department of Agriculture are involved with nonfederal dams. These include the Agricultural Stabilization and Conservation Service (ASCS), the Farmer's Home Administration (FMHA), the Forest Service, the Rural Electrification Administration (REA) and the Soil Conservation Service (SCS). Technical engineering is the responsibility of the Soil Conservation Service.

The U.S. Department of the Interior, Office of Surface Mining (OSM) provides support to state regulatory agencies that conduct dam inspection and monitoring as it relates to surface mining. The Department's Bureau of Reclamation also manages a program of water development which includes providing water for irrigation, the hydroelectric power industry, and recreation.

10.2.3 Consultants role in dam safety - A dam is a special kind of structure which is conceptually simple but made of many complicated components. Several engineering skills are needed to design, build, inspect and repair a dam, and it is uncommon that a dam owner has all of these technical skills. Even if the dam owner did have these skills, it is unlikely that an owner could devote the time and effort necessary to do the work properly. Thus, private consultants can play an important role in a dam safety program, and owners should consider contracting with consulting firms for assistance.

When hiring a consultant, certain steps will insure that an owner obtains what is really needed The initial screening of possible consultants should be based on professional qualifications. A list of consultants who have experience with dams may be available from the state office managing dam safety. The owner should then investigate the background and experience of the company and the specific experience of the individuals who will do the work.

The owner should be sure to define as clearly as possible the work to be done Although some owners select a consulting firm based on qualifications and then work with the firm to define the work to be done, an owner can often define the scope of work himself, and then receive bids and proposals from several consultants. This latter arrangement usually results in the lowest cost for a given piece of work.

If many of the items discussed in this guidebook are new and unfamiliar to a dam owner, a consultant should be contacted immediately. Professional consultants help conduct a proper and safe evaluation of a dam, and can help develop and execute an effective dam safety program. Of course, a dam owner should have confidence in the consultant he hires. When a consultant makes recommendations, they must be taken seriously.

APPENDIX A INSPECTION FORMS

EMBARMENT 1 012 2000TION CONDITION OSSERVATIONS CONDITION OSSERVATIONS SURFACE CRACKIG OSSERVATIONS HORIZONTAL ALICONNENT INITIAL BURROW KUTS AND/OR PUDDLES VECETATION CONDITION SURFACION CONDITION SURFACE CRACKIG SURFACION CONDITION SURFACE CRACKIG SURFACION CONDITION SURFACION CONDITION SURFACTON CONDITION SURFACE CRACKIG AL COMMENTS. REFER TO TARACTER ALICONTACT	INSTRUCTION DATE. I of 2 SUBBANKMENT 1 of 2 1 of 2 SUBBANKMENT 1 of 2 I end 2
EABANKMENT 1 of 2 OBSERVATIONS OBSERVATIONS NO. IF APPLICABLE.	

NAME	5		- INSPECTION DATE:	· .		
EA CTED			EMBANKMENT 2 of 2	CHEC ACT NEE	XK (TTON SDED	<u> </u>
ARI ARPE	LTEM. NO.	CONDITION	OBSERVATION	NONITOR	GATE	REPAIR
	11	7 WET AREA(S) (NO FLOW)				
	18	8 SEEPAGE				<u> </u>
34	1	9 SLIDE, SLOUGH, SCARP		<u> </u>		
IOTS	ล	0 EMBABUT. CONTACT				1
WA	21	11 CAVE IN, ANIMAL BURROW				
STRE	22	2 EROSION				<u> </u>
NM	23	3 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT		:		[
DC	54	4 VEGETATION CONTROL				
	2	St				
	58	9				
	5	7 PIEZOMETERS/OBSERV. WELLS				
	28	8 STAFF GAUGE AND RECORDER				
NOI	29	19 WEIRS				
TAT	30	0 SURVEY MONUMENTS				
MEN	31	11 DRAINS				
DATZ	32	2 FREQUENCY OF READINGS				
NI	33	13 LOCATION OF RECORDS				
	34	14				
	35	5				
UDDI	UI0	DNAL COMMENTS: REFER TO ITEM NO. IF AF	PLICABLE.			

4 Ċ

TE OF DALL

| Γ
z θ | REPAIR | | | | |

 | |
 |

 | | | | |
 | | |
 | |
|--|--|--------------------|---|--|--
--
--|---
--
--
--
--|--|---|---
--	--	---
BEDE EEDE	G¥LE INAESLI-	

 | |
 |

 | | | | |
 | | |
 | |
| CHI | MONITOR | | | | |

 | |
 |

 | | | | |
 | | |
 | |
| DOWNSTREAM AREA
AND MISC.
1 of 1 | OBSERVATIONS | | | | |

 | |
 |

 | | | | |
 | | | CICABLE
 | |
| | CONDITION | 6 ABUTMENT LEAKAGE | 17 FOUNDATION SEEPAGE | 8 SLIDE, SLOUGH, SCARP | 9 DRAINAGE SYSTEM | 0

 | H | 12 DOWNSTREAM HAZARD
DESCRIPTION
 | 13 DATE OF LAST UPDATE OF
EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN

 | 4 RESERVOIR SLOPES | IS ACCESS ROADS | 6 SECURITY DEVICES | |
 | 6 | 0 | DNAL COMMENTS: REFER TO ITEM NO. IF APPL
 | |
| DOWNSTREAM AREA INSPECTED A CONNECTED A CO | | | A
A | 4 | 4 | 4
51

 | 4 | •
 | <u> ∓</u>
2CE

 | 1M
4 | 5(| DDITIC | |
 | | | |
 |
| | DOWNSTREAM AREA
AND MISC.
1 of 1 | | KEPAIR GATE GATE CHECK MOUITOR 1 of 1 I of 1 1 of 1 Serentions 1 of 1 MUMBIC 1 of 1 Serentions 1 of 1 MUMBIC 1 of 1 | EA INSPECTED INVERSION CHECK INVESSION CONDITION INVESSION CONDITION INVESSION CONDITION INVESSION CONDITION INVESSION CONDITION INVESSION CONDITION INVESSION CONDITION | AREA
S SLUDE, SCOUGH, SCARE
S SLUDE, SCARE
S SLUDE, SCARE
S SLUDE, SCOUGH, SCARE
S SLUDE, | Image Image <th< td=""><td>STREAM AREA MACHINE S ITEM NO S ITEM NO</td><td>All All All 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 <t< td=""><td>CONNSTREAM AREA AREA DOWNSTREAM AREA DOWNSTREAM AREA DOWNSTREAM AREA Jacoba Jacoba Jacoba <td< td=""><td>ABBUTMENT ABBUTMENT ABBUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BOUNDATION 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 FOUNDATION SEPERAGE 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT</td><td>CHECK CONSTREAM ARE ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABU</td><td>I CESS KOADS
I CESS KOADS
I</td><td>Image: Description Image: De</td><td>Investore Investore 1 1 1 1 1 1<!--</td--><td>ABEA MARTEN ABEA MAST ABEA MAST ABOWSTREAM AREA 8 17 10 1 ABO MISCREAM AREA 8 17 10 1 1 ABO MAST 8 8 10 1 10 1 ABOWSTREAM AREA 8 8 1 10 1 1 1 ABO MAST 8 8 10 1</td><td>Image: line backer in the line bac</td><td>AILCONTINUENT ARA
MUSICALIMENTO
A MAITWENT LAXAGE
A MAITWENT LAXAGE</td><td>MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011</td></td></td<></td></t<></td></th<> | STREAM AREA MACHINE S ITEM NO S ITEM NO | All All All 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 <t< td=""><td>CONNSTREAM AREA AREA DOWNSTREAM AREA DOWNSTREAM AREA DOWNSTREAM AREA Jacoba Jacoba Jacoba <td< td=""><td>ABBUTMENT ABBUTMENT ABBUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BOUNDATION 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 FOUNDATION SEPERAGE 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT</td><td>CHECK CONSTREAM ARE ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABU</td><td>I CESS KOADS
I CESS KOADS
I</td><td>Image: Description Image: De</td><td>Investore Investore 1 1 1 1 1 1<!--</td--><td>ABEA MARTEN ABEA MAST ABEA MAST ABOWSTREAM AREA 8 17 10 1 ABO MISCREAM AREA 8 17 10 1 1 ABO MAST 8 8 10 1 10 1 ABOWSTREAM AREA 8 8 1 10 1 1 1 ABO MAST 8 8 10 1</td><td>Image: line backer in the line bac</td><td>AILCONTINUENT ARA
MUSICALIMENTO
A MAITWENT LAXAGE
A MAITWENT LAXAGE</td><td>MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011</td></td></td<></td></t<> | CONNSTREAM AREA AREA DOWNSTREAM AREA DOWNSTREAM AREA DOWNSTREAM AREA Jacoba Jacoba Jacoba <td< td=""><td>ABBUTMENT ABBUTMENT ABBUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BOUNDATION 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 FOUNDATION SEPERAGE 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT</td><td>CHECK CONSTREAM ARE ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABU</td><td>I CESS KOADS
I CESS KOADS
I</td><td>Image: Description Image: De</td><td>Investore Investore 1 1 1 1 1 1<!--</td--><td>ABEA MARTEN ABEA MAST ABEA MAST ABOWSTREAM AREA 8 17 10 1 ABO MISCREAM AREA 8 17 10 1 1 ABO MAST 8 8 10 1 10 1 ABOWSTREAM AREA 8 8 1 10 1 1 1 ABO MAST 8 8 10 1</td><td>Image: line backer in the line bac</td><td>AILCONTINUENT ARA
MUSICALIMENTO
A MAITWENT LAXAGE
A MAITWENT LAXAGE</td><td>MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011</td></td></td<> | ABBUTMENT ABBUTMENT ABBUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 3 BOUNDATION 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT 3 FOUNDATION SEPERAGE 3 ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABUTMENT | CHECK CONSTREAM ARE ABUTMENT ABUTMENT ABU | I CESS KOADS
I | Image: Description Image: De | Investore Investore 1 1 1 1 1 1 </td <td>ABEA MARTEN ABEA MAST ABEA MAST ABOWSTREAM AREA 8 17 10 1 ABO MISCREAM AREA 8 17 10 1 1 ABO MAST 8 8 10 1 10 1 ABOWSTREAM AREA 8 8 1 10 1 1 1 ABO MAST 8 8 10 1</td> <td>Image: line backer in the line bac</td> <td>AILCONTINUENT ARA
MUSICALIMENTO
A MAITWENT LAXAGE
A MAITWENT LAXAGE</td> <td>MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011</td> | ABEA MARTEN ABEA MAST ABEA MAST ABOWSTREAM AREA 8 17 10 1 ABO MISCREAM AREA 8 17 10 1 1 ABO MAST 8 8 10 1 10 1 ABOWSTREAM AREA 8 8 1 10 1 1 1 ABO MAST 8 8 10 1 | Image: line backer in the line bac | AILCONTINUENT ARA
MUSICALIMENTO
A MAITWENT LAXAGE
A MAITWENT LAXAGE | MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION MISCRITICAN DECIDION 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 1 011 |

SPILWAYS SPILWAYS I of 1 Bit scare Doservations Bit scare Doservations Bit scare Doservations Dittorion District Dittorion Distret Dittorin	I of 1 ADTE. SPILWAYS 1 of 1 1 of	INVERCION DATE. POINTON DOR DATE 1 of 1 1
J of 1 BERNATIONS	I of 1 OBSERVATIONS	
M , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		

¢

OULET WORKS OULET WORKS 1 of 1 1 of 1 1 Intake structure 1 Trashrack	ODJET WORKS 1 of 1 1 of 1 1 of 1 1 markected 1 marke	A Deservations 1 of 1 1 and 1 1 of	ODJET WORKS 1 0,1 1 0,1 1 1 10,1 1 1 TRASHRACK 1 2 STILLING BASIN 1 3 FRIMARY CLOSURE	Image: Structure 1 of 1 Image: Structure 0 Image: Structure 1 Image: Structure 1	A DITE TIPE ASTRUCTURE OBSERVATIONS OBSERVATIONS OBSERVATIONS OBSERVATIONS OBSERVATIONS OBSERVATIONS OBSERVATIONS OBSERVATIONS OF OLD TARE STRUCTURE OF OL	ILET PROPRIST ARRA INAC 1 1 ol 1 1 TASHRACK 1 FILLING BASIN 1 SCONDARY CLOSURE 1 SCONDARY CLOSURE 1 SCONTROL MECHANISM 1 OUTLET PUB 1 OUTLET PUB	Control marked region Control marked region 1 of 1 1 of 1 1 reashed region 0 1 region 1 1 regon 1 <tr< th=""><th>Contract cosume Contract cosume 1</th><th>ODDED VOORS AREA INSPECTED 1 0 ITTALES STRUCTURE 0 1 1 TRASHLACK 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 <td< th=""><th>All of a control of a</th><th>All of the services All of the services 1</th><th>Contraction Contraction Contraction 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1</th><th>OBSERVATIONS OPERATION 1</th><th>ODED VORS 1 Image Term 2 5 0 1</th><th>OLDED ADORS OLDED ADORS 1<th>I J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J</th><th>NAME (</th><th>ВL</th><th>DAM:</th><th>INSPECTION DATE</th><th></th></th></td<></th></tr<>	Contract cosume Contract cosume 1	ODDED VOORS AREA INSPECTED 1 0 ITTALES STRUCTURE 0 1 1 TRASHLACK 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 <td< th=""><th>All of a control of a</th><th>All of the services All of the services 1</th><th>Contraction Contraction Contraction 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1</th><th>OBSERVATIONS OPERATION 1</th><th>ODED VORS 1 Image Term 2 5 0 1</th><th>OLDED ADORS OLDED ADORS 1<th>I J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J</th><th>NAME (</th><th>ВL</th><th>DAM:</th><th>INSPECTION DATE</th><th></th></th></td<>	All of a control of a	All of the services All of the services 1	Contraction Contraction Contraction 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	OBSERVATIONS OPERATION 1	ODED VORS 1 Image Term 2 5 0 1	OLDED ADORS OLDED ADORS 1 <th>I J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J</th> <th>NAME (</th> <th>ВL</th> <th>DAM:</th> <th>INSPECTION DATE</th> <th></th>	I J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J	NAME (ВL	DAM:	INSPECTION DATE	
ABERVATIONS 10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TRASHRACK 12 TRASHRACK	ARE INVATIONS OBSERVATIONS 0 ITERA OBSERVATIONS 10 INTAKE STRUCTURE I 11 TRASHRACK I 12 STILLING BASIN I	ABSERVATIONS CONDITION N CONDITION N CONDITION N ITERSTRUCTURE	ACCUDITION OBSERVATIONS 10 ITTACK OBSERVATIONS 11 TRASHRACK ITTACK 12 STILLING BASIN ITTING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE ITTING 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE ITTING	Notice Notice Notice	APPE OUDITION 1 ITERM VO 10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE	Interview Observation 1 Transmer 1 Stitution 1 Stitution 1 Stitution 1 Stitution 1 Sconbary closure 1 Scontrol 1	ARR CONDITION 1 ITAGE STRUCTURE 1 ITASHRACK 1 ITASHRACK 1 ITASHRACK 13 STILLING BASIN 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 STILLING BASIN 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 ECONDARY CLOSURE 19 ENDINOL 10 OUTLET PIPE 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 ENDINOLID	ASSERVATIONS ONDERTOR 1 ITASHIACK 10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TRASHIACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL 16 STILLING BASIN 17 PRIMARY CLOSURE 18 ECONDARY CLOSURE 19 OUTLET PUPE 10 OUTLET TOWER 11 OUTLET TOWER 12 SEPAGE	ASSERVATIONS Interest Structure Observations 10 Intake Structure 11 Transing Structure 12 Structure 13 Frankack 14 Secondation 15 Frankack 16 Intake Structure 17 Frankary CLOSURE 18 Secondation 19 SEEPAGE 10 OUTLET PIPE 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 SEEPAGE 13 Bussion along data for 14 Secontrol mechanism	And Oublino 1 Trade structure 1 Frankack 1 Frankack <td< th=""><th>Action Observations 1 Trake structure D 1 Scontact D</th><th>Activities Outlook 0 Intake Structure 0 10 Intake Structure 0 11 Trashrack 0 12 Strilling Basin 0 13 Primary CLOSURE 1 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 0 15 CONTECT PRE 0 16 CONTECT PRE 0 17 OUTLET PRE 0 18 ENONOR 0 19 SEEPAGE 0 10 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 0 11 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 0 12 SEEPAGE 0 12 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 0</th><th>ABBE CONDITION 10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TARAE STRUCTURE 12 STILING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 TARAE STRUCTURE 15 STILING BASIN 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET TOWER 18 ECONDARY CLOSURE 19 ELONDARY CLOSURE 10 OUTLET TOWER 11 OUTLET TOWER 12 CONTROL MECHANISM 13 ECONDARY CLOSURE 14 ECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET TOWER 17 UUTLET TOWER 18 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 18 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 19 INUSULA MOVEMENT 10 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 11 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 12 UNUSULA MOVEMENT</th><th>ABARTATIONS OBSERVATIONS 1 Intrace Structure 1 Intrace 1 Interver <td< th=""><th>Alternation Observations 1 Intrace structure D 1 Intrace structure <td< th=""><th>ABREATION AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AN</th><th>CLED EV</th><th></th><th></th><th>OUTLET WORKS 1 of 1</th><th> CHEC</th></td<></th></td<></th></td<>	Action Observations 1 Trake structure D 1 Scontact D	Activities Outlook 0 Intake Structure 0 10 Intake Structure 0 11 Trashrack 0 12 Strilling Basin 0 13 Primary CLOSURE 1 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 0 15 CONTECT PRE 0 16 CONTECT PRE 0 17 OUTLET PRE 0 18 ENONOR 0 19 SEEPAGE 0 10 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 0 11 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 0 12 SEEPAGE 0 12 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 0	ABBE CONDITION 10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TARAE STRUCTURE 12 STILING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 TARAE STRUCTURE 15 STILING BASIN 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET TOWER 18 ECONDARY CLOSURE 19 ELONDARY CLOSURE 10 OUTLET TOWER 11 OUTLET TOWER 12 CONTROL MECHANISM 13 ECONDARY CLOSURE 14 ECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET TOWER 17 UUTLET TOWER 18 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 18 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 19 INUSULA MOVEMENT 10 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 11 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 12 UNUSULA MOVEMENT	ABARTATIONS OBSERVATIONS 1 Intrace Structure 1 Intrace 1 Interver 1 Interver <td< th=""><th>Alternation Observations 1 Intrace structure D 1 Intrace structure <td< th=""><th>ABREATION AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AN</th><th>CLED EV</th><th></th><th></th><th>OUTLET WORKS 1 of 1</th><th> CHEC</th></td<></th></td<>	Alternation Observations 1 Intrace structure D 1 Intrace structure <td< th=""><th>ABREATION AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AN</th><th>CLED EV</th><th></th><th></th><th>OUTLET WORKS 1 of 1</th><th> CHEC</th></td<>	ABREATION AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AN	CLED EV			OUTLET WORKS 1 of 1	 CHEC
70 INTAKE STRUCTURE 71 TRASHRACK	70 INTAKE STRUCTURE 71 TRASHRACK 72 STILLING BASIN	70 INTAKE STRUCTURE 71 TRASHRACK 72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE	70INTAKE STRUCTURE71TRASHRACK72STILLING BASIN73PRIMARY CLOSURE74SECONDARY CLOSURE	10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TRASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM	10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TRASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE	70 INTAKE STRUCTURE 71 TRASHRACK 72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 OUTLET PIPE 77 OUTLET TOWER	10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TRASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 ENGION ALONG DAM TOE 19 ENGION ALONG DAM TOE	70 INTAKE STRUCTURE 71 TRASHRACK 72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 OUTLET PIPE 71 OUTLET TOWER 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 OUTLET PIPE 77 OUTLET TOWER 78 ENOSION ALONG DAM TOE 79 SEEPAGE	10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 ENSION ALONG DAM TOE 19 ERDON ALONG DAM TOE 10 UTLET TOWER 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 BUNUSULE	10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TRASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRMARY CLOSURE 14 BECONDARY CLOSURE 15 PRIMARY CLOSURE 16 OUTLET POLE 17 OUTLET POLE 18 OUTLET TOWER 19 EROSION ALONG MAINEN 10 OUTLET TOWER 11 OUTLET TOWER 12 BEROSION ALONG MAINEN 13 ENOSION ALONG MAINEN 14 OUTLET TOWER 15 SEEPAGE 16 UNUSULAL MOVEMENT 17 UNUSULAL MOVEMENT	10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 STILLING BASIN 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 ECONDARY CLOSURE 19 ENORIDARY CLOSURE 10 OUTLET PIPE 11 OUTLET TOWER 12 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 13 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 14 OUTLET TOWER 15 EEEPAGE 16 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 17 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT	10 INTAKE STRUCTURE 11 TRASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 19 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 10 UTLET TOWER 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 ENDENDARY CLOSURE	NTARE STRUCTURE Introduction 1 TRASHRACK 2 STILLING BASIN 3 PRIMARY CLOSURE 4 SECONDARY CLOSURE 5 SCONTROL MECHANISM 6 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 ENSION ALONG DAM TOE 19 SEEPAGE 10 OUTLET TOWER 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 BENSION ALONG DAM TOE 13 SEEPAGE 14 OUTLET TOWER 15 SEEPAGE 16 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 17 OUTLET TOWER 18 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 19 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 10 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 SEEPAGE 13 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 14 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 15 SEEPAGE 16 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 17 SEEPAGE 18 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 19 MOVEMENT 10 MOVEMENT	10 INTARE STRUCTURE 1 TAASHACK 1 TAASHACK 1 TAASHACK 1 STILLING BASIN 1 STILLING BASIN 1 SECONDARY CLOSURE 1 OUTLET PIPE 1 OUTLET TOWER 1 DUTUSUAL MONEMENT 1 DUUSUAL MONEMENT 1 DULET PIPE	No. Intract Estructure 1 TaxBihack 1 TaxBihack 1 TaxBihack 1 FarLung Basin 13 Findary Closure 14 Secondary Closure 15 Findary Closure 16 Contract Prime 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 Econdory Al Closure 19 EEPAGE 10 OUTLET PIPE 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 OUTLET PIPE 13 EROSION ALONE AM TOE 14 EROSION ALONE DAM TOE 15 EEPAGE 16 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 ENOSION ALONE DAM TOE 19 EEPAGE 10 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 OUTLET PIPE 13 EEDAGE 14 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 15 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 16 UNUSUAL MOVENTS. REFER TO TEM NO. IF APPLICABLE	70 INTAKE STRUCTURE 71 TAXBIRACX 72 STILLING BASIN 73 PIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 CONTROL MECHANISM 77 CONTROL MECHANISM 78 CONTROL MECHANISM 79 CONTROL MECHANISM 70 OULLET FIPE 71 OULLET TOWER 72 CONTROL MECHANISM 73 CONTROL MECHANISM 74 OULLET TOWER 75 SEEPAGE 76 OULLET TOWER 77 OULLET TOWER 78 OULLET TOWER 79 SEEPAGE 8 OULLET TOWER 8 OULLET TOWER 9 INUSULAL MOVEMENT 9 INUSULAL MOVEMENT 18 OULLET TOWER 19 INUSULAL MOVELENT 10 INUSULAL MOVELENT 11 OULLET TOWER	aa Iuspe	ILEM NO.	CONDITION	OBSERVATIONS	IIVESTI- MONITOR
71 TRASHRACK	71 TRASHRACK 72 STILLING BASIN	71 TRASHRACK 72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE	71 TRASHRACK 72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE	71 TRASHRACK 72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM	71 TRASHRACK 72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 OUTLET PIPE	11 TRASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET TOWER	11 TRASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET TOWER 18 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE	11 TASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET TOWER 18 ECONDARY CLOSURE 19 SEEPAGE 10 SEEPAGE	11 TRASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 ENSION ALONG DAM TOE 19 EEPAGE 10 OUTLET TOWER 11 OUTLET TOWER 12 BUILET TOWER 13 ENSION ALONG DAM TOE 14 BEDAGE	11 TASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 ENSION ALONG DAM TOE 19 ERPAGE 10 UNUSULI MOVEMENT 11 UNUSULI MOVEMENT	11 TRASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 MOUTLET TOWER 19 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 10 UTLET TOWER 11 OUTLET TOWER 12 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 13 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 14 UNUSULAL MOVEMENT	11 TAJSHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 OUTLET PIPE 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 ECONDARY CLOSURE 19 BEROSIONE 10 OUTLET PIPE 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 OUTLET TOWER 13 EROSION ALONE 14 OUTLET TOWER 15 EEPAGE 16 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 17 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT	1 TASHRACK 1 TASHRACK 1 STILLING BASIN 1 STILLING BASIN 1 RIMARY CLOSURE 1 SECONDARY CLOSURE 1 OUTLET PIPE 1 OUTLET PIPE 1 OUTLET PIPE 1 OUTLET TOWER 1 SEEPAGE 1 OUTLET TOWER 1 SEEPAGE 1 SEPAGE 1 SEPAGE 1 SEPAGE 1 SEPAGE 1 SEPAGE <	1 TRASHRACK 2 FTLILING BASIN 3 PRIMARY CLOSURE 1 BECONDARY CLOSURE 1 CUTLET PIPE 1 OUTLET PIPE 1 OUTLET PIPE 1 BERSION ALONG DAM TOE 1 DUTUET TOWER 1 BERSION ALONG DAM TOE 1 BERSION ALONG DAM TOE 1 BERSION ALONG TOE 1 B	11 TRASHRACK 12 FITLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 ECONDARY CLOSURE 19 ELEVACE 19 OUTLET PIPE 10 OUTLET PIPE 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 ELEVACE 13 ELEVACE 14 INUSUAL MOVEMENT 15 INUSUAL MOVEMENT 16 INUSUAL MOVEMENT 17 UUTLET PIPE 18 INUSUAL MOVEMENT 19 ELEPACE 10 INUSUAL MOVEMENT 11 INUSUAL MOVEMENT 12 INUSUAL MOVEMENT 13 INUSUAL MOVEMENTS. REFER TO ITEM NO. IF APPLCABLE.	11 TRASHRACK 12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 SICONDARY CLOSURE 17 SILLING BASIN 18 SICONDARY CLOSURE 19 SICONDARY CLOSURE 19 SICONDARY CLOSURE 19 SICONDARY CLOSURE 10 OUTLET PIPE 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 SICON ALONG DAM TOE 13 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 14 DUTLET TOWER 15 UNUSULI MOVEMENT 16 UNUSULI MOVEMENT 17 DUTLET TOWENTS. REFER TO ITEM NO. IF APPLICABLE.		70	INTAKE STRUCTURE		
	72 STILLING BASIN	72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE	72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE	72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM	72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 OUTLET PIPE	12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET TOWER	72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 OUTLET PIPE 77 OUTLET PIPE 78 ENOSION ALONG DAM TOE	72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 OUTLET PIPE 77 OUTLET TOWER 78 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 79 SEEPAGE	72 STILING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 OUTLET PIPE 71 OUTLET PIPE 72 BEROND ALONG DAM TOE 73 BEROND ALONG DAM TOE 74 BUNUSULA MOVEMENT	2 STILING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 OUTLET PIPE 71 OUTLET TOWER 73 BEROSION ALONG DAM TOE 74 SEEPAGE 75 OUTLET TOWER 76 OUTLET TOWER 77 OUTLET TOWER 78 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 79 SEEPAGE 80 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 81 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT	72 STILLING BASIN 73 PRIMARY CLOSURE 74 SECONDARY CLOSURE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 OUTLET PIPE 77 OUTLET PIPE 78 EROSION ALONG BAM TOE 79 SEEPAGE 80 UNUSULAL MOVEMENT 81 UNUSULAL MOVEMENT	12 STILLING BASIN 13 PRIMARY CLOSURE 14 SECONDARY CLOSURE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 CONTROL MECHANISM 17 CONTROL MECHANISM 18 CONTROL MECHANISM 19 CONTROL MECHANISM 10 CUTLET PIPE 11 CUTLET TOWER 12 CUTLET TOWER 13 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 14 SEEPAGE 15 SEEPAGE 16 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 17 SEEPAGE 18 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT	12 STILLING BASIN 13 FRIMARY CLOSUBE 14 SECONDARY CLOSUBE 15 CONTROL MECHANISM 16 OUTLET PIPE 17 OUTLET PIPE 18 ENOSION ALONG DAM TOE 19 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 10 ENOSION ALONG DAM TOE 11 OUTLET PIPE 12 ENOSION ALONG DAM TOE 13 ENOSION ALONG DAM TOE 14 ENOSION ALONG DAM TOE 15 ENOSION ALONG DAM TOE 16 UNUSULAL MOVEMENT 17 UNUSULAL MOVEMENT 18 UNUSULAL MOVEMENT 18 MONTANO. IF APPLICABLE.	2 STILING BASIN 73 PRMARY CLOSUBE 74 BECONDARY CLOSUBE 75 CONTROL MECHANISM 76 OUTLET PIPE 77 OUTLET TOWER 78 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 79 SEEPAGE 80 UNUSULI MOVEMENT 81 UNUSULI MOVEMENT 82 UNUSULI MOVEMENT 83 UNUSULI MOVEMENT 84 UNUSULI MOVEMENT 82 UNUSULI MOVEMENT 83 UNUSULI MOVEMENT 84 UNUSULI MOVEMENT 84 UNUSULI MOVEMENT	2 STILING BASIN 7 PRIMARY CLOSURE 7 PRIMARY CLOSURE 7 SCONTROL MECHANISM 7 OUTLET PIPE 7 OUTLET PIPE 7 OUTLET PIPE 8 EROSION ALONG DAM TOE 9 SEEPAGE 9 SEEPAGE 9 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 9 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 10 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT	2 FILLING BASIN 1 PRIMARY CLOSURE 1 PRIMARY CLOSURE 1 SECONDARY CLOSURE		F	TRASHRACK		

CONCRETE/MASONRY Description Description 10,1 10,1 10,1 10,1 10,1	NAME	5	JF DAM:	INSPECTION DATE:			
OBSERVATIONS SUBFACE CONDITIONS SUBFACE CONDITIONS SUBFACE CONDITIONS SUBFACE CONDITIONS SUBFACE CONDITIONS SUBFACE SUBFAC	ECTED EA		CONC	RETE/MASONRY DAMS 1 of 1	GH CH CH	1 m V m	BEDE
14 SURFACE CONDITIONS 15 CONDITION OF JOINTS 16 SURFACE CONDITIONS 17 ABUTNEINT-DAM CONTACTS 18 ABUTNEINT-DAM CONTACTS 19 SURFACE CONDITIONS 10 SURFACE CONDITIONS 11 SURFACE CONDITIONS 12 SURFACE CONDITIONS 13 SURFACE CONDITIONS 14 SURFACE CONDITIONS 15 CUNSULIA MOVEMENT 16 CONDITIONS 17 UNUSULIA MOVEMENT 18 LEAKAGE 19 ELEK 10 FEACE 11 POWNISTREAM 12 DOWNISTREAM 13 BUTNEINT-DAM CONTACTS 14 DAMINANT 15 EAKAGE 16 PONITIONS 17 PONITIONS 18 SURFACE CONDITIONS 19 HONZONTAL ALIGNMENT 10 HONZUNTAL ALIGNMENT 11 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 11 UNUSULIA MOVEMENTS 11 UNUSULIA MOVEMENTS	igeni Igeni	ITEM NO.	CONDITION ITEM NO.	OBSERVATIONS	MOUITOR		GATE INVESTI-
Image: Second		84	84 SURFACE CONDITIONS				
86 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 81 ABUTMENT-DAM CONTACTS 82 ABUTMENT-DAM CONTACTS 83 SURFACE CONDITIONS 91 CONDITION OF JOINTS 92 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 93 SURFACE CONDITIONS 94 SURFACE CONDITIONS 95 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 96 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 97 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 98 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 99 LEAKAGE 91 EARAGE 92 PRAINS 93 LEAKAGE 94 PRAINS 95 INUSUAL MOVEMENT 96 IEAKAGE 97 UNUSUAL ALIGNMENT 98 UNUSUAL ALIGNMENT 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 91 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 92 UNUSUAL MOVEMENTS 93 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 94 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 95 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 96 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 97 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 98 UNUSUAL		85	85 CONDITION OF JOINTS				
Image: State Contracts Image: State Contracts Image: State Contracts 88 91 Sutracte Conditions 91 91 Sutracte Conditions 91 Condition of Joints 92 Unusual MoveMent 92 Unusual MoveMent 93 Aburnent-Dam Contracts 93 Aburnent-Dam Contracts 94 Parains 94 Parains 95 95 Leakade Parains 96 Parains 96 Parains 96 Parains 96 97 Vertical AliGNMENT Vertical AliGNMENT Parains 98 Subrace Conditions 96 Parains 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT Vertical AliGNMENT 91 Vertical AliGNMENT Vertical AliGNMENT 92 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT Vertical AliGNMENT 93 Unusual Movement Unusual Movement 94 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT Vertical AliGNMENT 94 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT Vertical AliGNMENT 94 Unusual Movement Unusual Movement 95 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT Unusual	MA :	86	86 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT				
1 CONDITIONS 1 1 CONTACTS 1 1 AUTIMENT-DAM CONTACTS 1 1 AUTIMENT-AUTIONS 1 1 AUTION 1 <	STRE STRE	8	87 ABUTMENT-DAM CONTACTS			1	
8 1 CONDITIONS 1 90 SURFACE CONDITIONS 2 1 91 CONDITION OF JOINTS 2 1 92 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 2 1 93 ABUTMENT-DAM CONTACTS 2 1 94 PRAINS 1 1 95 LEAKAGE 1 1 96 PRAINS 1 1 97 LEAKAGE 1 1 98 SURFACE CONDITIONS 1 1 99 PURIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 1 1 91 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 1 1 92 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 1 1 93 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 1 1 94 LEAKAGE 1 1 95 LEAKAGE 1 1 96 PREDENTIONS 1 1 97 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 1 1 98 LEAKAGE 1 1 1 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 1 1 1	1 541) 1	88	88				1
9 SURFACE CONDITIONS 91 CONDITION OF JOINTS 92 UNUSULA MOVEMENT 93 ABUTMENT-DAM CONTACTS 94 DRAINS 95 LEAKAGE 96 LEAKAGE 97 SURFACE CONDITIONS 98 SURFACE CONDITIONS 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 91 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 92 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 93 SURFACE CONDITIONS 94 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 95 LEAKAGE 96 LONIZONA 97 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 98 LUNUSULAL MOVEMENT 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 91 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 92 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 93 LONDITIONS 94 LONDITIONS 95 LONDITIONS 96 LONDITIONS 97 LONDITIONS 98 LONDITION OF JOINTS 99 LONDITION OF JOINTS 90 LONDITION OF J		68	689				
9 CONDITION OF JOINTS 20 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 21 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 22 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 33 ABUTIMENT-DAM CONTACTS 34 DRAINS 35 LEAKAGE 36 LEAKAGE 37 Suffect 38 SURFACE CONDITIONS 39 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 30 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 31 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 32 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 33 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT		8	90 SURFACE CONDITIONS				1
92 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 93 ABUTMENT-DAM CONTACTS 94 DRAINS 95 LEAKAGE 96 EAKAGE 97 Surface 98 SURFACE CONDITIONS 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 91 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 92 CONDITIONS 93 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT 94 CONDITIONS 95 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT		16	91 CONDITION OF JOINTS				T
31 ABUTMENT-DAM CONTACTS 32 ABUTMENT-DAM CONTACTS 34 DRAINS 35 LEAKAGE 36 LEAKAGE 37 PONECTOR 38 SURFACE CONDITIONS 39 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 39 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 30 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 31 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 32 LONDITION OF JOINTS 33 UNUSUAL MOVEMENTS	W	8	92 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT				
94 DRAINS 95 LEAKAGE 96 VERTICAL 97 Surface 98 SURFACE CONDITIONS 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 91 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 92 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 93 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 94 UNUSUAL MOVEMENT	E	93	93 ABUTMENT-DAM CONTACTS			1	
95 LEAKAGE 96 99 97 99 98 SURFACE CONDITIONS 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 90 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 91 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 92 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 93 UNUSUAL MOVEMENTS	T2N VST	94	94 DRAINS				
96 97 98 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 91 98 99 99 99 99 99 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 99 90 91 91 92 94 95 96 97 98 99 <th>MOC</th> <td>95</td> <td>95 LEAKAGE</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>1</td> <td></td>	MOC	95	95 LEAKAGE			1	
91 92 93 94 95 95 96 97 98 99 90 91 91 92 93 94 95 95 96 97 98 99 90 91 91 92 94 95 96 97 97 98 99 90 90 91 91 91 91 91 91 91 91 91 91 92 93 94 94 95 95 96 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 <th>1</th> <td>96</td> <td>96</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	1	96	96				
98 SURFACE CONDITIONS 99 HORLZONTAL ALIGNMENT 99 HORLZONTAL ALIGNMENT 1 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 1 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 1 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 1 CONDITION OF JOINTS 1 UNUSUAL MOVEMENTS 1 UNUSUAL MOVEMENTS		6	97			1	
99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT 1 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 1 VERTICAL ALIGNMENT 1 CONDITION OF JOINTS 1 UNUSUAL MOVEMENTS		98	98 SURFACE CONDITIONS				
VERTICAL ALIGNMENT VERTICAL ALIGNMENT CONDITION OF JOINTS UNUSUAL MOVEMENTS UNUSUAL MOVEMENTS		66	99 HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT				
CONDITION OF JOINTS UNUSUAL MOVEMENTS CRE	12		VERTICAL ALIGNMENT				
UNUSUAL MOVEMENTS	CBE		CONDITION OF JOINTS			1	
			UNUSUAL MOVEMENTS				
		-				ľ	-

APPENDIX B REPORT FORM

DAM INCIDENT REPORT FORM

;

DATE	
NAME OF DAM	
STREAM NAME	
LOCATION	
COUNTY	
OBSERVER	
OBSERVER TELEPHONE	
NATURE OF PROBLEM	
LOCATION OF PROBLEM AREA	
EXTENT OF PROBLEM AREA	
FLOW QUANTITY AND COLOR	
WATER LEVEL IN RESERVOIR	
WAS SITUATION WORSENING	
EMERGENCY STATUS	
CURRENT WEATHER CONDITIONS	
ADDIFIONAL COMMENTS:	
<u></u> '	
	£
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

APPENDIX C GLOSSARY

ABUTMENT

That part of a valley side against which a dam is constructed. An artificial abutment is sometimes constructed as a concrete gravity section, to take the thrust of an arch dam where there is no suitable natural abutment. Right and left abutments are those on respective sides of an observer looking downstream

ACTIVE STORAGE

The volume of a reservoir that is available for power generation, irrigation, flood control, or other purposes. Active storage excludes flood surcharge. It is the reservoir capacity less inactive and dead storages. The terms "useful storage," "unable storage," or "working storage" are sometimes used but are not recommended.

AIRVENT PIPE

A pipe designed to provide air to the outlet conduit to reduce turbulence during release of water. Extra air is usually necessary downstream of constrictions.

APPURTENANT STRUCTURES

Ancillary features of a dam, such as the outlet, spillway, powerhouse, tunnels, etc.

AQUEDUCT

An artificial channel for conveying water, i.e., a canal, pipe, or tunnel; hence the terms "connecting aqueduct" and "diversion aqueduct."

ARCH DAM

A concrete or masonry dam that is curved so as to transmit the major part of the water pressure to the abutments.

Double Curvature Arch Dam

An arch dam that is curved vertically as well as horizontally.

Arch Buttress Dam

See Buttress Dam.

Arch Gravity Dam

See Gravity Dam

AUXILIARY SPILLWAY

See Spillway.

AXIS OF DAM

A plane or curved surface, arbitrarily chosen by a designer, appearing as a line in a plan or cross section to which the horizontal dimensions of the dam can be referred

BACKWATER CURVE

The longitudinal profile of the water surface in an open channel where the depth of flow has been increased by an obstruction, an increase in channel roughness, a decrease in channel width, or a flattening of the bed slope

BASE WIDTH (Base Thickness)

The maximum width or thickness of a dam measured horizontally between upstream and downstream faces and normal to the axis of the dam but excluding projections for outlets, etc.

BERM

A horizontal step or bench in the sloping profile of an embankment dam

100

BLANKET

Drainage Blanket

A drainage layer placed directly over the foundation material.

Grout Blanket

See Consolidation Grouting

Upstream Blanket

An impervious layer placed on the reservoir floor upstream of a dam. In the case of an embankment dam, the blanket may be connected to the impermeable element in a dam.

BUTTRESS DAM

A dam consisting of a watertight upstream face supported at intervals on the downstream side by a series of buttresses.

Arch Buttress Dam (Curved Buttress Dam)

A buttress dam that is curved in plan

Multiple Arch Dam

A buttress dam whose upstream part comprises a series of arches.

Cofferdam

A temporary structure enclosing all or part of a construction area so that construction can proceed in a dry area. A "diversion cofferdam" diverts a river into a pipe, channel, or tunnel.

CONCRETE LIFT

In concrete work the vertical distance between successive horizontal construction joints.

CONDUIT

A closed channel for conveying discharge through or under a dam.

CONSOLIDATION GROUTING (Blanket Grouting)

The injection of grout to consolidate a layer of the foundation, resulting in greater impermeability and/or strength.

CONSTRUCTION JOINT

The interface between two successive placings or pours of concrete where a bond, not permanent separation is intended.

CORE WALL

A wall built of impervious material, usually concrete or asphaltic concrete, in the body of an embankment dam to prevent leakage.

CREST GATE

See Gate

CREST LENGTH

The length of the top of a dam, including the length of spillway, powerhouse, navigation lock, fish pass, etc. where these structures form part of the length of a dam. If detached from a dam, these structures should not be included.

CREST OF DAM

The crown of an overflow section of a dam. In the United States, the term "crest of dam" is often used when "top of dam" is meant. To avoid confusion, the terms "crest of spillway" and "top of dam" may be used to refer to the overflow section and the dam proper, respectively.

CRIB DAM

A gravity dam built up of boxes, cribs, crossed timbers, or gabions and filled with earth or rock.

CULVERT

(a) A drain or waterway built transversely under a road, railway, or embankment, usually consisting of a pipe or covered channel of box section. (b) A gallery or waterway constructed through any type of dam, which is normally dry but is used occasionally for discharging water; hence the terms "scour culvert," "drawoff culvert," and "spillway culvert."

CURTAIN

See Grout curtain

CURVED BUTTRESS DAM (Arch Buttress Dam)

See Buttress Dam

CURVED GRAVITY DAM

See Gravity Dam.

CUTOFF

An impervious construction or material which reduces seepage or prevents it from passing through foundation material.

CUTOFF TRENCH

An excavation later to be filled with impervious material to form a cutoff. Sometimes used incorrectly to describe the cutoff itself.

CUTOFF WALL

A wall of impervious material (e.g., concrete, asphaltic concrete, steel sheet piling) built into the foundation to reduce seepage under the dam

DAM

A barrier built across a watercourse for impounding or diverting the flow of water

DEAD STORAGE

The storage that lies below the invert of the lowest outlet and that, therefore, cannot be withdrawn from the reservoir.

DESIGN FLOOD

See Spillway Design Flood

DIAMOND HEAD BUTTRESS DAM

See Buttress Dam.

DIAPHRAGM

See Membrane.

DIKE (Levee)

A long low embankment whose height is usually less than 4 to 5 meters and whose length is more than 10 or 15 times the maximum height. Usually applied to embankments or structures built to protect land from flooding. If built of concrete or masonry the structure is usually referred to as a flood wall. Also used to describe embankments that block areas on a reservoir rim that are lower than the top of the main dam and that are quite long. In the Mississippi River basin, where the old French word levee has survived, the term now applies to flood protecting embankments whose height can average up to 10 to 15 meters.

DIVERSION CHANNEL CANAL, OR TUNNEL

A waterway used to divert water from its natural course. These terms are generally applied to temporary structures such as those designed to bypass water around a dam site during construction. "Channel' is normally used instead of "canal" when the waterway is short. Occasionally these terms are applied to permanent structures.

DRAINAGE AREA

An area that drains naturally to a particular point on a river.

DRAINAGE LAYER OR BLANKET

A layer of permeable material in a dam to relieve pore pressure or to facilitate drainage of fill.

DRAINAGE WELLS (Relief Well)

A vertical well or borehole, usually downstream of impervious cores, grout curtains, or cutoffs, designed to collect and direct seepage through or under a dam to reduce uplift pressure under or within a dam. A line of such wells forms a drainage curtain.

DRAWDOWN

The lowering of water surface level due to release of water from a reservoir.

EARTH DAM OR EARTHFILL DAM

See Embankment Dam.

EMBANKMENT

A slope of fill material, usually earth or rock, that is longer than it is high. The sloping side of a dam.

Embankment Dam (Fill Dam)

Any dam constructed of excavated natural materials or of industrial waste materials.

Earth Dam (Earthfill Dam)

An embankment dam in which more than 50% of the total volume is formed of compacted fine-grained material obtained from a borrow area.

Homogeneous Earthfill Dam

An embankment dam constructed of similar earth material throughout, except internal drains or drainage blankets; distinguished from a zoned earthfill dam.

Hydraulic Fill Dam

An embankment dam constructed of materials, often dredged, that are conveyed and placed by suspension in flowing water

Rockfill Dam

An embankment dam in which more than 50% of the total volume comprises compacted or dumped pervious natural or crushed rock.

Rolled Fill Dam

An embankment dam of earth or rock in which the material is placed in layers and compacted by using rollers or rolling equipment.

Zoned Embankment Dam

An embankment dam, of which is composed of zones of selected materials having different degrees of porosity, permeability, and density.

EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN

A predetermined plan of action to be taken to reduce the potential for property damage and loss of lives in an area affected by a dam break.

EMERGENCY GATE

A standby or reserve gate used only when the normal means of water control are not available.

EMERGENCY SPILLWAY

See Spillway.

ENERGY/DISSIPATING VALVE

Any device constructed in a waterway to reduce or destroy the energy of fastflowing water

EPICENTER

The point on the earth's surface directly above the focus of an earthquake.

FACE

The external surface of a structure, e.g., the surface of a wall of a dam.

FACING

With reference to a wall or concrete dam, a coating of material, masonry or brick, for architectural or protection purposes, e.g., stonework facing, brickwork facing. With reference to an embankment dam, an impervious coating or face on the upstream slope of the dam.

FAILURE

The uncontrolled release of water from a dam.

FILTER (Filter Zone)

A band or zone of granular material that is incorporated into a dam and is graded (either naturally or by selection) so as to allow seepage to flow across or down the filter without causing the migration of material from zones adjacent to the filter.

FLASHBOARDS

A length of timber, concrete, or steel placed on the crest of a spillway to raise the retention water level but that may be quickly removed in the event of a flood either by a tripping device or by deliberately designed failure of the flashboard or its supports.

FLOODPLAIN

An area adjoining a body of water or natural stream that has been or may be covered by flood water.

FLOODPLAIN MANAGEMENT

A management program to reduce the consequences of flooding -- either by natural runoff or by dam failure -- to existing and future properties in a flood-plain.

FLOOD ROUTING

The determination of the attenuating effect of storage on a flood passing through a valley, channel, or reservoir.

FLOOD SURCHARGE

The volume or space in a reservoir between the controlled retention water level and the maximum water level. Flood surcharge cannot be retained in the reservoir but will flow over the spillway until the controlled retention water level is reached. (The term "wet freeboard" for describing the depth of flood surcharge is not recommended; see Freeboard).

FLOOD WALL

A concrete wall constructed adjacent to a stream for the purpose of preventing flooding of property on the landward side of the wall; normally constructed in lieu of or to supplement a levee where the land required for levee construction is expensive or not available.

FOUNDATION OF DAM

The natural material on which the dam structure is placed.

FREEBOARD

The vertical distance between a stated water level and the top of a dam. "Net freeboard," "dry freeboard," "flood freeboard," or "residual freeboard" is the vertical distance between the estimated maximum water level and the top of a dam. "Gross freeboard" or "total freeboard" is the vertical distance between the maximum planned controlled retention water level and the top of a dam. (That part of the "gross freeboard" attributable to the depth of flood surcharge is sometimes referred to as the "wet freeboard," but this term is not recommended; it is preferable that freeboard be used with reference to the top of the dam.

GALLERY

(a) A passageway within the body of a dam or abutment; hence the terms "grouting gallery," "inspection gallery," and "drainage gallery." (b) A long and rather narrow hall; hence the following terms for a power plant: "valve gallery," "transformer gallery," and "busbar gallery."

GATE

A device in which a leaf or member is moved across the waterway from an external position to control or stop the flow.

Bulkhead Gate

A gate used either for temporary closure of a channel or conduit to empty it for inspection or maintenance or for closure against flowing water when the head difference is small, e.g., for diversion tunnel closure. Although a bulkhead gate is usually opened and closed under nearly balanced pressures, it nevertheless may be capable of withstanding a high pressure differential when in the closed position.

Crest Gate (Spiliway Gate)

A gate on the crest of a spillway to control overflow or reservoir water level.

Emergency Gate

A standby or reserve gate used only when the normal means of water control is not available.

Fixed Wheel Gate (Fixed Roller Gate, Fixed Axle Gate)

A gate having wheels or rollers mounted on the end posts of the gate. The wheels bear against rails fixed in side grooves or gate guides.

Flap Gate

A gate hinged along one edge, usually either the top or bottom edge. Examples of bottom-hinged flap gates are tilting gates and belly gates, so-called due to their shape in cross section.

Flood Gate

A gate to control flood release from a reservoir.

Guard Gate (Guard Valve)

A gate or valve that operates fully open or closed. It may function as a secondary device for shutting off the flow of water in case the primary closure device becomes inoperable, but is usually operated under balanced pressure, noflow conditions.

Outlet Gate

A gate controlling the outflow of water from a reservoir.

Radial Gate (Tainter Gate)

A gate with a curved upstream plate and radial arms hinged to piers or other supporting structures.

Regulating Gate (Regulating Valve)

A gate or valve that operates under full pressure and flow conditions to throttle and vary the rate of discharge.

Slide Gate (Sluice Gate)

A gate that can be opened or closed by sliding it in supporting guides.

GRAVITY DAM

A dam constructed of concrete and/or masonry that relies on its weight for stability

Arch Gravity Dam

An arch dam in which part of the water pressure is transmitted to the abutments by horizontal thrust and part to the foundation by cantilever action.

Curved Gravity Dam

A gravity dam that is curved in plan.

Hollow Gravity Dam (Cellular Gravity Dam)

A dam that has the outward appearance of a standard gravity dam but that is of hollow construction.

GROSS STORAGE (Reservoir Capacity (Gross Capacity of Reservoir)

The gross capacity of a reservoir from the river bed up to maximum controlled retention water level. It includes active, inactive, and dead storage.

GROUT BLANKET

See Blanket.

GROUT CAP

A concrete pad or wall constructed to facilitate pressure grouting of the grout curtain beneath it.

GROUT CURTAIN (Grout Cutoff)

A barrier produced by injecting grout into a vertical zone, usually narrow horizontally, in the foundation to reduce seepage under a dam.

HEIGHT ABOVE LOWEST FOUNDATION

The maximum height from the lowest point of the general foundation to the top of the dam.

HYDRAULIC HEIGHT

The height to which water rises behind a dam and the difference between the lowest point in the original streambed at the axis of the dam and the maximum controllable water surface.

HYDROGRAPH

A graphic representation of discharge, stage, or other hydraulic property with respect to time for a particular point on a stream (At times the term is applied to the phenomenon the graphic representation describes; hence a flood hydrograph is the passage of a flood discharge past the observation point)

INACTIVE STORAGE

The storage volume of a reservoir measured between the invert level of the lowest outlet and minimum operating level.

INCLINOMETER (Inclometer)

An instrument, usually consisting of a metal or plastic tube inserted in a drill hole and a sensitized monitor either lowered into the tube or fixed within the tube. This measures at different points the tube's inclination to the vertical. By integration, the lateral position at different levels of the tube may be found relative to a point, usually the top or bottom of the tube, assumed to be fixed. The system may be used to measure settlement.

INTAKE

Any structure in a reservoir, dam, or river through which water can be drawn into an aqueduct.

INTENSITY SCALE

An arbitrary scale used to describe the severity of earthquake-induced shaking at a particular place. The scale is not based on measurement but on direct observation. Several scales are used (e.g., the Modified Mercalli scale, the MSK scale) all with grades indicated by Roman numerals from I to XII.

INTERNAL EROSION

See Piping.

INUNDATION MAP

A map delineating the area that would be inundated in the event of a dam failure.

LEAKAGE

Uncontrolled loss of water by flow through a hole or crack.

LINING

With reference to a canal, tunnel, shaft, or reservoir, a coating of asphaltic concrete, reinforced or unreinforced concrete, shotcrete, rubber or plastic to provide watertightness, prevent erosion, reduce friction, or support the periphery of the structure. May also refer to lining, such as steel or concrete, of outlet pipe or conduit.

LIVE STORAGE

The sum of active and inactive storage volumes. When there is no inactive storage, as in some irrigation reservoirs, the terms "live storage" and "active storage" are equivalent.

LOW LEVEL OUTLET (Bottom Outlet)

An opening at a low level from a reservoir generally used for emptying or for scouring sediment and sometimes for irrigation releases.

MAGNITUDE (see also Richter Scale)

A rating of an earthquake independent of the place of observation. It is calculated from seismographic measurements and is properly expressed in ordinary numbers and decimals based on a logarithmic scale. Each higher number expresses an amount of earthquake energy that is 10 times greater than that expressed by the preceding lower number, e.g., a magnitude 6 earthquake has 10 times more energy than a magnitude 5.

MASONRY DAM

A dam constructed mainly of stone, brick, or concrete blocks that may or may not be joined with mortar. A dam having only a masonry facing should not be referred to as a masonry dam.

MAXIMUM CREDIBLE EARTHQUAKE (MCE)

The severest earthquake that is believed to be possible at a site on the basis of geologic and seismological evidence. It is determined by regional and local studies including a complete review of all historic earthquake data of events sufficiently nearby to affect the site, all faults in the area, and attenuations due to faults to the site.

MAXIMUM CROSS SECTION OF DAM

A cross section of a dam at the point of maximum height of the dam.

MAXIMUM WATER LEVEL

The maximum water level, including flood surcharge, the dam is designed to withstand

MEMBRANE (Diaphragm)

A sheet or thin zone or facing made of a flexible material that is sometimes referred to as a diaphragm wall or diaphragm

MINIMUM OPERATING LEVEL

The lowest level to which the reservoir is drawn down under normal operating conditions.

MORNING GLORY SPILLWAY

See Spillway.

NORMAL WATER LEVEL

For a reservoir with a fixed overflow sill the lowest crest level of that sill. For a reservoir whose outflow is controlled wholly or partly by movable gates, siphons or other means, it is the maximum level to which water may rise under normal operating conditions, exclusive of any provision for flood surcharge.

OPERATING BASIS EARTHQUAKE

A hypothetical earthquake used for design purposes. A more moderate standard than the Maximum Credible Earthquake (see), it is based on regional and local geology and seismology studies and is considered likely to occur during the life of the dam.

ONE-HUNDRED YEAR (100-Year) EXCEEDANCE INTERVAL

The flood magnitude expected to be equalled or exceeded on the average of once in 100 years. It may also be expressed as an exceedance frequency with a percent chance of being exceeded in any given year.

OUTLET

An opening through which water can be freely discharged from a reservoir.

OVERFLOW DAM (Overtoppable Dam)

A dam designed to be overtopped.

PARAPET WALL

A solid wall built along the top of a dam for ornament, for the safety of vehicles and pedestrians, or to prevent overtopping.

PEAK FLOW

The maximum instantaneous discharge that occurs during a flood. It is coincident with the peak of a flood hydrograph.

PERVIOUS ZONE

A part of the cross section of an embankment dam comprising material of high permeability.

PHREATIC SURFACE

The free surface of groundwater at atmospheric pressure.

PIEZOMETER

An instrument for measuring pore water pressure within soil, rock, or concrete.

PIPING

The progressive development of internal erosion by seepage, appearing downstream as a hole or seam discharging water that contains soil particles.

PORE PRESSURE

The interstitial pressure of water within a mass of soil rock, or concrete.

PRESSURE CELL

An instrument for measuring pressure within a mass of soil, rock, or concrete or at an interface between one and the other.

PRESSURE RELIEF PIPES

Pipes used to relieve uplift or pore water pressure in a dam foundation or in the dam structure.

PROBABLE MAXIMUM FLOOD (PMF)

A flood that would result from the most severe combination of critical meteorologic and hydrologic conditions possible in the region.

One-Half PMF

A flood with a peak flow equal to one-half of the peak flow of a probable maximum flood.

PROBABLE MAXIMUM PRECIPITATION (PMP)

The maximum amount and duration of precipitation that can be expected to occur on a drainage basin.

PUMPED STORAGE RESERVOIR

A reservoir filled entirely or mainly with water pumped from outside its natural drainage area.

REGULATING DAM

A dam impounding a reservoir from which water is released to regulate the flow in a river.

RELIEF WELL

See Drainage Well.

RESERVOIR AREA

The surface area of a reservoir when filled to controlled retention water level.

RESERVOIR ROUTING

The computation by which the interrelated effects of the inflow hydrograph, reservoir storage, and discharge from the reservoir are evaluated.

RESERVOIR SURFACE

The surface of a reservoir at any level.

RICHTER SCALE

A scale proposed by C.F. Richter to describe the magnitude of an earthquake by measurements made in well-defined conditions and with a given type of seismograh. The zero of the scale is fixed arbitrarily to fit the smallest recorded earthquakes. The largest recorded earthquake magnitudes are near 8.7 and are the result of observations and not an arbitrary upper limit like that of the intensity scale.

RIPRAP

A layer of large uncoursed stones, broken rock, or precast blocks placed in random fashion on the upstream slope of an embankment dam, on a reservoir shore, or on the sides of a channel as a protection against wave and ice action. Very large riprap is sometimes referred to as armoring.

RISK ASSESSMENT

As applied to dam safety, the process of identifying the likelihood and consequences of dam failure to provide the basis for informed decisions on a course of action.

ROCKFILL DAM

See Embankment Dam

ROLLCRETE

A no-slump concrete that can be hauled in dump trucks, spread with a bulldozer or grader, and compacted with a vibratory roller.

SEEPAGE

The interstitial movement of water that may take place through a dam, its foundation, or its abutments.

SEEPAGE COLLAR

A projecting collar, usually of concrete, built around the outside of a pipe, tunnel, or conduit under an embankment dam, to lengthen the seepage path along the outer surface of the conduit.

SILL

(a) A submerged structure across a river to control the water level upstream (b) The crest of a spillway. (c) A horizontal gate seating, made of wood, stone, concrete or metal at the invert of any opening or gap in a structure, hence the expressions "gate sill" and "stoplog sill."

SLOPE

(a) The side of a hill or mountain (b) The inclined face of a cutting or canal or embankment. (c) Inclination from the horizontal. In the Untied States, it is measured as the ratio of the number of units of horizontal distance to the number of corresponding units of vertical distance. The term is used in English for any inclination and is expressed as a percent when the slope is gentle, in which case the term "gradient" is also used.

SLOPE PROTECTION

The protection of a slope against wave action or erosion.

SLUICEWAY

See low-level outlet.

SPILLWAY

A structure over or through which flood flows are discharged. If the flow is controlled by gates, it is a controlled spillway; if the elevation of the spillway crest is the only control, it is an uncontrolled spillway.

Auxiliary Spillway (Emergency Spillway)

A secondary spillway designed to operate only during exceptionally large floods.

Fuse Plug Spillway

An auxiliary or emergency spillway comprising a low embankment or a natural saddle designed to be overtopped and eroded away during a very rare and exceptionally large flood.

Primary Spillway (Principal Spillway)

The principal or first-used spillway during flood flows.

Shaft Spillway (Morning Glory Spillway)

A vertical or inclined shaft into which flood water spills and then is conducted through, under, or around a dam by means of a conduit or tunnel. If the upper part of the shaft is splayed out and terminates in a circular horizontal weir, it is termed a "bellmouth" or "morning glory" spillway.

Side Channel Spillway

A spillway whose crest is roughly parallel to the channel immediately downstream of the spillway

Siphon Spillway

A spillway with one or more siphons built at crest level. This type of spillway is sometimes used for providing automatic surface-level regulation within narrow limits or when considerable discharge capacity is necessary within a short period of time.

SPILLWAY CHANNEL (Spillway Tunnel)

A channel or tunnel conveying water from the spillway to the river downstream.

SPILLWAY DESIGN FLOOD (SDF)

The largest flood that a given project is designed to pass safely. The reservoir inflow-discharge hydrograph used to estimate the spillway discharge capacity requirements and corresponding maximum surcharge elevation in the reservoir.

STILLING BASIN

A basin constructed to dissipate the energy of fast-flowing water, e.g., from a spillway or bottom outlet, and to protect the river bed from erosion.

STOPLOGS

Large logs or timber or steel beams placed on top of each other with their ends held in guides on each side of a channel or conduit providing a cheaper or more easily handled temporary closure than a bulkhead gate

STORAGE

The retention of water or delay of runoff either by planned operation, as in a reservoir, or by temporary filling of overflow areas, as in the progression of a flood crest through a natural stream channel.

STORAGE RESERVOIR

A reservoir that is operated with changing water level for the purpose of storing and releasing water

TAILRACE

The tunnel, channel, or conduit that conveys the discharge from the turbine to the river; hence the terms "tailrace tunnel" and "tailrace canal."

TAILWATER LEVEL

The level of water in the tailrace at the nearest free surface to the turbine or in the discharge channel immediately downstream of the dam.

TOE OF DAM

The junction of the downstream face of a dam with the ground surface, also referred to as downstream toe. For an embankment dam the junction of the upstream face with ground surface is called the upstream toe.

TOP OF DAM

The elevation of the uppermost surface of a dam, usually a road or walkway, excluding any parapet wall, railings, etc.

TOP THICKNESS (Top Width)

The thickness or width of a dam at the level of the top of the dam. In general, the term "thickness" is used for gravity and arch dams and "width" is used for other dams.

TRANSITION ZONE (Semipervious Zone)

A part of the cross section of a zoned embankment dam comprising material of intermediate size between that of an impervious zone and that of a permeable zone.

TRASH RACK

A screen located at an intake to prevent the ingress of debris.

TUNNEL

A long underground excavation usually having a uniform cross section. Types of tunnel include: headrace tunnel, pressure tunnel, collecting tunnel, diversion tunnel, power tunnel, tailrace tunnel, navigation tunnel, access tunnel, scour tunnel, drawoff tunnel, and spillway tunnel.

UNDERSEEPAGE

The interstitial movement of water through a foundation.

UPLIFT

The upward pressure in the pores of a material (interstitial pressure) or on the base of a structure.

UPSTREAM BLANKET

See Blanket.

VALVE

A device fitted to a pipeline or orifice in which the closure member is either rotated or moved transversely or longitudinally in the waterway so as to control or stop the flow.

WATERSHED DIVIDE

The divide or boundary between catchment areas (or drainage areas).

WATERSTOP

A strip of metal, rubber, or other material used to prevent leakage through joints between adjacent sections of concrete.

WEIR

(a) A low dam or wall built across a stream to raise the upstream water level, termed fixed-crest weir when uncontrolled (b) A structure built across a stream or channel for the purpose of measuring flow, sometimes called ameasuring weir or gauging weir. Types of weir include broad-crested weir, sharp-crested weir, drowned weir, and submerged weir.

APPENDIX D SELECTED BIBLIOGRAPHY

STATE MANUALS

Arkansas Soil and Water Conservation Commission (1980) Safety Evaluation of Small Earth Dams Little Rock, Arkansas

Colorado State Engineer's Office, Division of Water Resources (1983) Dam Safety Manual Denver, Colorado.

State of Illinois Department of Water Resources (1980) Guidelines and Forms for Inspection of Illinois Dams, Springfield, Illinois

Kentucky Natural Resources and Environmental Protection Cabinet, Division of Water Resources (1985) Guidelines for Maintenance and Inspection of Dams in Kentucky.

Michigan Edition, SIS Consultants, Dam Safety Guidebook.

North Carolina Department of Natural Resources and Community Development, Division of Land Resources, Land Quality Security Dam Operation Maintenance and Inspection Manual.

North Dakota Dam Design Handbook, North Dakota State Engineer.

Ohio Department of Natural Resources (1983) Operation, Maintenance, and Inspection Manual for Dams, Dikes, and Levees

Pennsylvania Department of Environmental Resources, Division of Dam Safety (1986) A Manual for the Inspection, Maintenance, and Operation of Dams in Pennsylvania.

Virginia State Water Control Board, Bureau of Water Control Management (1983) Safety Evaluation of Small Earth Dams, Information Bulletin 549, Richmond, Virginia.

Wyoming Disaster and Civil Defense Office (1984) Dam Safety: A Manual for Private Dam Owners.

Selected Bibliography

American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE)/U.S. Commission on Large Dams (USCOLD) (1975) Lessons from Dam Incidents, USA New York: ASCE

American Concrete Institute (ACI) (1968). "Guide for Making A Condition Survey of Concrete In Service", Journal of the American Concrete Institute, Vol. 65, No. 11: ACI.

(1982). "Materials and General Properties of Concrete." In ACI Manual of Concrete Practice, Part 1. Detroit: ACI.

Bartholomew, C.L., et al (1986). Embankment Dam Instrumentation Manual U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, Washington, D.C., Government Printing Office.

(1987). (Io be published.) Concrete Dam Instrumentation Manual, U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, Washington, D.C., Government Printing Office.

Concrete Construction Publication, Inc. (1983). "Four Steps to Successful Concrete Repair." Vol. 28, No. 1. Addison, Illinois: Concrete Construction Publication, Inc.

(1985) "Crack Repair." Vol. 30, No.1. Addison, Illinois: Concrete Constructon Publication, Inc.

Dunnicliff, J. (1981). Measurements Committee Report, U.S. Committee on large Dams Section VI, Inventory of Geotechnical Instruments, Manufacturers or Suppliers.

Golze, A.R., ed. (1977). Handbook of Dam Engineering, Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., New York.

Graham, W.J. (1983). Dam Failure Warning Effectivness, Denver, Colorado, U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. Unpublished report.

Interagency Committee on Dam Safety, Subcommittee on Emergency Action Planning (1985). Emergency Action Planning Guidelines for Dams, Washington, D.C., Federal Emergency Management Agency.

Interagency Committee on Large Dams (ICOLD) (1969). General Considerations Applicable to Instrumentation for Earth and Rockfill Dams, Committee on Observations of Dam and Models, Bulletin, No. 21, Boston, Massachusetts.

(1981). Automated Observation for Instantaneous Safety Control of Dams and Reservoirs, Bulletin No. 41, Boston, Massachusetts.

International Conference of Building Officials (1979). Uniform Building Code, 1979 Edition, Whittier, California.

Jansen, R.B. (1968). A Prescription for Dam Safety - Instrumentation and Surveillance, Conference of College of Engineering, University of California, Berkeley.

(1980) Dams and Public Safety, U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.

Mine Safety and Health Administration, Mine Waste and Geotechnical Engineering Division (1984). Construction Inspection of Dams and Coal Refuse Embankments, Bruceton Mills, Pennsylvania.

National Association of Conservation Districts "Dam Safety - Who is Responsible?" Slide show produced by National Association of Conservation Districts, Washington, D.C.

National Research Council (1982). Geotechnical Instrumentation for Monitoring Field Performance, Washington, D.C., National Academy Press.

National Research Council, Committee on the Safety of Existing Dams (1983). Safety of Existing Dams, Evaluation and Improvement, Washington, D.C., National Academy Press.

National Research Council, Committee on Safety Criteria for Dams (1985). Safety of Dams Flood and Earthquake Criteria, Washington, D.C., National Academy Press.

National Research Council, Committee on Safety of Non-Federal Dams (1982). Safety of Non-Federal Dams: A Review of the Federal Role, Washington, D.C., National Academy Press. Sharma and Raphael (1979/1981). General Considerations on Reservoir Instrumentation, Committee on Measurements, USCOLD, Boston, Massa-chusetts.

Sowers, G.F. (1961). "The Use and Misuse of Earth Dams," Consulting Engineering, New York.

Truby, Jack, Hagan, Pat (1985). The Dam Failure Hazard; Awareness and Preparedness, Golden, Colorado, Colorado Division Of Disaster Emergency Services.

Tschantz, Bruce A. (1972). The Inspection and Maintenance of Privately Owned Dams in Tennessee, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, Tennessee.

Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) (1984). Updated Review Summary of State Non-Federal Dam Safety Programs, Washington, D.C.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1971 and 1976) Instrumentation of Earth and Rockfill Dams, Parts 1 and 2, August 1971 and November 1976, Washington, D.C.

(1980a) Flood Emergency Plans, Guidelines for Corps Dams, Hydrologic Engineering Center, Davis, California

(1980b) Instrumentation for Measurement of Structural Behavior of Concrete Structures, Washington, D.C.

(1982) National Program for Inspection of Non-Federal Dams - Final Report to Congress, Washington, D.C.

U.S. Committee on Large Dams (USCOLD) (1983). Guidelines for Inspection of Dams Following Earthquakes, Washington, D.C., Government Printing Office.

(1986). General Considerations Applicable to Performance Monitoring of Dams, U.S. Committee on Large Dams, Boston, Massachusetts.

U.S. Dept of Agriculture (1980). Forest Service and Soil Conservation Service, Guide for Safety Evaluation and Periodic Inspection of Existing Dams, Washington, D.C.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation (1974). Earth Manual, 2d. ed., Washington, D.C., Government Printing Office.

(1975). Concrete Manual, A Water Resource Technical Publication, Washington, D.C. Government Printing Office.

(1976). Design of Gravity Dams, Washington, D.C., Government Printing Office.

(1977). Design of Arch Dams, Washington, D.C., Government Printing Office.

(1985) Design of Small Dams, Washington, D.C., Government Printing Office

(1982). Operation and Maintenance Guidelines for Small Dams, Washington, D.C., Government Printing Office.

(1983). Safety Evaluation of Existing Dams, (Seed Manual), Washington, D.C., Government Printing Office.

(1984). Water Measurement Manual, Washington, D.C., Government Printing Office.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Geological Survey (1985). Floods From Dam Failures, Denver, Colorado.

Wilson, S.D. (1973). "Deformantion of Earth and Rockfill Dams", Embankment Dam Engineering Casagrande Volume, New York, John Wiley & Sons.

Soil Physics

Data Assimilation with Soil Water Content Sensors and Pedotransfer Functions in Soil Water Flow Modeling

Feng Pan

Dep. of Environmental Science and Policy Univ. of Maryland College Park, MD 20742

Current address: Dep. of Civil & Environmental Engineering Energy & Geoscience Institute The Univ. of Utah Salt Lake City, UT 84112

Yakov Pachepsky*

USDA-ARS Environmental Microbial and Food Safety Lab. Beltsville, MD 20705

Diederik Jacques

Institute for Environment, Health, and Safety Belgian Nuclear Research Centre (SCK•CEN) BE-2400 Mol Belgium

Andrey Guber

USDA-ARS Environmental Microbial and Food Safety Lab. Beltsville, MD 20705

Current address: Dep. of Crop and Soil Sciences Michigan State Univ. East Lansing, MI 48824

Robert L. Hill

Dep. of Environmental Science and Policy Univ. of Maryland College Park, MD 20742

Soil water flow models are based on simplified assumptions about the mechanisms, processes, and parameters of water retention and flow. That causes errors in soil water flow model predictions. Data assimilation (DA) with the ensemble Kalman filter (EnKF) corrects modeling results based on measured state variables, information on uncertainty in measurement results and uncertainty in modeling results. The objectives of this work were (i) to evaluate pedotransfer functions (PTFs) as a source of data to generate an ensemble of Richards' equation-based models for the EnKF application to the assimilation of soil water content data and (ii) to research how effective assimilation of soil moisture sensor data can be in correcting simulated soil water content profiles in field soil. Data from a field experiment were used in which 60 two-rod time domain reflectometry (TDR) probes were installed in a loamy soil at five depths to monitor the soil water content. The ensemble of models was developed with six PTFs for water retention and four PTFs for the saturated hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat}). Measurements at all five depths and at one or two depths were assimilated. Accounting for the temporal stability of water contents substantially decreased the estimated noise in data. Applicability of the Richards' equation was confirmed by the satisfactory calibration results. In absence of calibration and data assimilation, simulations developed a strong bias caused by the overestimation of K_{sat} from PTFs. Assimilating measurements from a single depth of 15 cm or of 35 cm provided substantial improvements at all other observation depths. An increase in data assimilation frequency improved model performance between the assimilation times. Overall, bringing together developments in pedotransfer functions, temporal stability of soil water patterns, and soil water content sensors can create a new source of data to improve modeling results in soil hydrology and related fields.

Abbreviations: DA, data assimilation; EnKF, ensemble Kalman filter; K_{satr} saturated hydraulic conductivity; PDF, probability density function; PTF, pedotransfer function; TDR, time domain reflectometry.

A large number of soil water flow and storage models have been developed for applications in hydrology, meteorology, agronomy, contaminant hydrology, and other fields. Each of these models is based on a set of simplified assumptions about the mechanisms, processes, and parameters of water retention and flow, and it is often not possible to predict whether a particular set of assumptions will be applicable for a specific site. Therefore, errors in soil water modeling predictions arise that result from both conceptual uncertainty and the lack of detailed knowledge about model parameters.

Soil water content monitoring data can be used to decrease errors in models. One way to do that is to monitor soil water content for a long period of time and

Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 76:829-844

doi:10.2136/sssaj2011.0090

Received 7 Mar. 2011.

^{*}Corresponding author (Yakov.Pachepsky@ars.usda.gov).

 $^{{\}ensuremath{\mathbb C}}$ Soil Science Society of America, 5585 Guilford Rd., Madison WI 53711 USA

All rights reserved. No part of this periodical may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Permission for printing and for reprinting the material contained herein has been obtained by the publisher.
to calibrate the model. This is usually a nontrivial task given the high nonlinearity of realistic soil water flow models, layering that may require separate parameter sets and observations within each layer, and the need to accumulate observations of a substantial number of both flood and dry spell events.

Using monitoring data to periodically correct modeling results is a different way to reduce modeling errors. The correction consists in updating simulated values, that is, replacing simulated values of environmental variables with values that are closer to the measured ones. This operation is called DA. It has become a common approach in modeling atmospheric and oceanic systems (Lahoz et al., 2010).

Data assimilation in soil water flow and storage modeling has a substantial history. First applications were focused on modeling water storage in irrigated soils with soil water balance computed for the whole soil profile (Aboitiz et al., 1986; Or and Hanks, 1992). Neutron probe measurements were used to correct the simulated total soil water storage in soil profiles (1.5-m deep in the work of Or and Hanks, 1992). Wendroth et al. (1999) showed that DA in soil water modeling could be efficient if the soil water model includes three layers. A large volume of research was devoted to assimilating remote sensing data on surface soil moisture to infer the profile distribution of soil water contents. Originally, coupled heat transport and water equations were used as the model needing corrections by DA (Entekhabi et al., 1994; Walker et al., 2001a). Later, the soil water flow model given by Richards' equation was used in remote sensing DA (Heathman et al., 2003; Das and Mohanty, 2006). Semiempirical soil water flow and storage models with a small number of vertical compartments were used for coarser spatial scales (Crow and Van Loon, 2006; Huang et al., 2008).

The simplest way of DA is the direct insertion of the measured values of state variables in place of simulated ones. Although this DA method has been applied from time to time (Houser et al., 1998; Walker et al., 2001b; Heathman et al., 2003), it has been recognized that DA-based correction of modeling results should use information on uncertainty in data and uncertainty in modeling results. Simulated values should be changed to the values very close to measured ones if the uncertainty in data is much less than the uncertainty in modeling results. On the other hand, there is no reason to substantially change simulated values if the uncertainty in modeling results is much less than the uncertainty in data. This concept has been formalized by applying the statistical technique called Kalman filter which is a proven data assimilation method for linear dynamics and measurement processes with Gaussian error statistics (Kalman, 1960). This technique has been applied from the very beginning of data assimilation in soil moisture modeling (Aboitiz et al., 1986; Or and Hanks, 1992). As the DA for nonlinear models became of interest, the EnKF was proposed by Evensen (1994) to overcome limitations of Kalman filter. The EnKF is a sequential DA method, which uses an ensemble of model states to represent the error statistics of the model estimation. The idea is to start an ensemble of (many) simulations by varying

830

model parameters, initial state variables, and forcing within feasible ranges. The variation in modeling results within the ensemble at the time of state variable update is used to define the uncertainty in modeling results. Vereecken et al. (2008) noted that the conceptual simplicity, relative ease of implementation, and computational efficiency of the EnKF make the method an attractive option for DA in vadose zone hydrology. The EnKF has been proven to be an efficient approach to correct Richards' equation-based soil flow modeling results of soil water contents by assimilating surface soil moisture (Das and Mohanty, 2006).

Soil moisture DA from sources other than remote sensing of surface soil moisture received little attention so far. At the same time, soil water content or soil matric potential sensors have become the wide-spread source of data on water contents in deep soil layers (Vereecken et al., 2008). Capacitance sensors, for example, have been used in irrigation scheduling (Fares et al., 2006), estimating soil hydraulic properties (Kelleners et al., 2005), evaluating tree water uptake (Schaffer, 1998), upscaling soil water contents (Guber et al., 2009) and many other applications. Examples of soil moisture sensors data assimilation are not numerous, and include the pioneer work of Wendroth et al. (1999) on assimilation of tensiometer data, and assimilation of vadose zone recharge data (Ng et al., 2009).

Selection of the ensemble of models can strongly affect the efficiency of data assimilation with EnKF. Crow and Van Loon (2006) noted that in land data assimilation, relatively little guidance exists concerning strategies for selecting the appropriate magnitude and/or type of introduced model noise. They used the example of coarse-scale soil water model to demonstrate that inappropriate model error assumptions can worsen the performance of a model. In case of Richards' equation-based soil water modeling, feasible ranges of initial soil water contents can be established for a specific case, but establishing a feasible ensemble of soil water flow parameter sets is far from trivial. It was recently proposed to build an ensemble of soil water flow simulations using an ensemble of PTFs (Guber et al., 2006, 2008). The argument went that the accuracy of PTF outside the data collection region is essentially unknown, and the ensemble forecasts offer a way of filtering the predictable from the unpredictable through averaging-the features that are consistent among ensemble members are preserved, while those that are inconsistent are reduced in amplitude. Perhaps more important, the ensemble itself, as a sample from possible forecast outcomes, can be used to estimate the forecast uncertainty and the likely structure of forecast errors (Hamill et al., 2004). Pedotransfer functions were used to adjust the spatial distribution of soil texture and hydraulic properties to match simulated and measured soil moisture when the direct insertion of remotely sensed surface soil water content was used as the DA method (Santanello et al., 2007). However, pedotransfer functions have not been so far used in soil water sensor data assimilation.

The objectives of this work were (a) to evaluate PTFs as a source of data to generate an ensemble of models for the EnKF application to the assimilation of soil water content sensor data and (b) to research how effective assimilation of soil moisture sensor data can be in correcting simulated soil water content profiles in field soil. A field experimental dataset was used in which the temporal stability of soil water content patterns was observed and used in data assimilation procedure.

MATERIALS AND METHODS Soil Water Content Monitoring Data

The experimental setup and soil water content data have been previously described by Jacques (2000) and Pachepsky et al. (2005). In brief, the experimental field was located at Bekkevoort, Belgium. It was situated at the bottom of a gentle slope and was covered with a meadow. The soil was classified as Eutric Regosol (FAO, 1975). A trench, 1.2-m deep and 8-m long, was dug at the field site. The grass cover was removed from the experimental area. A plastic sheet to isolate the disturbed trench zone covered one side of the trench. Volumetric water content was measured with TDR. Sixty two-rod TDR probes (25-cm long, 0.5-cm rod diam., 2.5-cm rod spacing) were installed along the 5.5 m of the trench at 12 locations each 50 cm at five depths of 15, 35, 55, 75, and 95 cm (Fig. 1). Soil texture and organic matter content were measured in samples taken where the probes were installed. Grain-size analyses of the sand samples have been performed according to the European standard EN 933-1. Samples were prepared by eliminating carbonates and organic matter. For the particles larger than 50 µm, a standard sieving was used with mesh sizes of 100, 250, 500, and 1000 $\mu m.$ For the particles smaller than 50 µm, a dispersing agent was added first after which the solid/water mix was put in a suspension cylinder for determination of the fine particles with class boundaries of 2,

11, and 22 μ m. The organic matter content was determined using the rapid dichromate oxidation method adapted from the Walkley-Black procedure. Soil texture was sandy loam at depths of 15, 35, and 55 cm, and loam at depths of 75 and 95 cm. One measurement cycle for all TDRprobes took approximately 35 min, and the time difference between two measurements for the same probe was 2 h. After all devices were installed, the trench was filled. Rainfall was continuously measured at the site with a rainfall recorder (200 cm^2) with a floated pen system on a paper (0.1 mm interval, rotation speed 1 cm h^{-1}). Other meteorological parameters were obtained from the station 3 km from the site. A thin layer of gravel (1-2 cm) was evenly distributed on the study area: (i) to decrease the erosive effect of the rain impact on the bare soil surface, (ii) to minimize the evaporation from the soil surface, and (iii) to decrease the growth of weed on the experimental plot. Weeds were regularly removed from the site during the summer. Field measurements started on 11 Mar. 1998 (Day 0) and finished on 31 Mar. 1999 (Day 384). A site-specific TDR calibration (Jacques, 2000) was used.

Ensemble Kalman Filter: Theory and Application

The Kalman filter is an implementation of the Bayesian update method. Given a probability density function (PDF) of the state of the modeled system (the prior) and the probability distribution function of data, the Bayes theorem is used to obtain the PDF after the data has been taken into account (the posterior). The Bayesian update incorporates new data when they become available, and model advances in time from one update to another. The following description is based on the work of Mandell (2007).

The Kalman filter relies on normal distributions of data and modeling results. Let the model for any simulated time generate N state variables x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n . The PDF p(x) of the vector of simulation results $\mathbf{x} = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$ is

$$p(\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{A}_1 \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{x}-\boldsymbol{\mu})^T \mathbf{Q}^{-1}(\mathbf{x}-\boldsymbol{\mu})\right] \qquad [1]$$

where μ is the vector of mean values of variables $x_1, x_2, x_n, \mathbf{Q}$ is the covariance matrix, A_1 as well as A_2, A_3 , and A_4 in equations below, are scaling multipliers to have the integral of probability distribution function equal to one. The function $p(\mathbf{x})$ is the prior probability distribution on the moment the state has



Fig. 1. Time domain reflectometry probe placement (dot) at the trench wall. Locations 1 through 12 denote 12 positions along the trench where sets of five sensors-one for each measurement depths were installed. Filled rectangles show Ap, C1, and C2 horizons top to bottom. Dashed lines show the average position of the horizon boundary, and white bands show the observed range of horizon boundary depths. Average values of clay, silt, and sand content are given for the probe installation depths. Adopted from (Pachepsky et al., 2005).

to be updated to account for data. The vector of data values **d** is also assumed to be normally distributed with the mean $\overline{\mathbf{d}}$ and covariance matrix **R**. It is assumed that the mean data vector $\overline{\mathbf{d}}$ is related to state variables **x** via matrix **H** as $\overline{\mathbf{d}} = \mathbf{H}\mathbf{x}$. The value **Hx** is what the value of the data would be for the state **x** in the absence of data errors. Then the probability density $p(\mathbf{d}|\mathbf{x})$ of the data **d** conditional of the system state **x**, is

$$p(\mathbf{d} | \mathbf{x}) = A_2 \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{d} - \mathbf{H}\mathbf{x})^T \mathbf{R}^{-1}(\mathbf{d} - \mathbf{H}\mathbf{x})\right) [2]$$

For the update purposes, one needs the probability density of states conditioned on data $p(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{d})$ rather than the probability density of data conditioned on states $p(\mathbf{d} | \mathbf{x})$. The conversion of $p(\mathbf{d} | \mathbf{x})$ to $p(\mathbf{x} | d)$ can be done using the Bayes theorem

$$p(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{d}) = A_3 p(\mathbf{d} | \mathbf{x}) p(\mathbf{x})$$
[3]

States conditioned on data, that is, $\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{d}$, are posterior states, they are referred below as \mathbf{x}^{p} . When [1] and [2] are used to compute the right-hand side of [3], the expression for $p(\mathbf{x}^{p})$ is obtained in the form:

$$p(\mathbf{x}^{p}) = A_{3} \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{x}^{p} - \boldsymbol{\mu}^{p})^{T} \mathbf{Q}^{p-1}(\mathbf{x}^{p} - \boldsymbol{\mu}^{p})\right] [4]$$

The posterior mean μ^p and posterior covariance Q^p in Eq. [4] are given by the Kalman update formulas:

$$\mu^{p} = \mu + K(d - H\mu)$$

$$Q^{p} = (I - KH)Q$$
[5]

where

$$\mathbf{K} = \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{T}}(\mathbf{H}\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{T}} + \mathbf{R})^{-1}$$
 [6]

is the Kalman update matrix. The Kalman update changes state variables taking into account (i) data available at the moment when predictions have been obtained, (ii) the accuracy of those data, and (iii) variability of state variables. One important feature of the Kalman filter is that the number of elements (measurements) in the data vector \mathbf{d} is usually much smaller than the number of state variables– elements of the vector \mathbf{x} .

The EnKF has been developed to overcome the difficulty of using the original Kalman filter in cases when the dependence of the covariance matrix \mathbf{Q} on time is difficult to find. The EnKF estimates the covariance matrix as the sample covariance computed from the ensemble simulation results. The ensemble is composed from randomly generated equiprobable realizations of the studied model. The randomness may apply to initial conditions, model parameters, and boundary conditions or forcing.

Let the ensemble consists of N models and each model predicts n state variables. Let the predictions of the *i*th model form the vector \mathbf{x}_i that has n elements $\mathbf{x}_{i, i} = 1, 2, ..., n$, which are predicted values of state variables. The $n \times N$ matrix $\mathbf{X} = [\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, ..., \mathbf{x}_N]$ is the prior ensemble. The goal is to correct the predictions at each of preset update times by changing this matrix to the posterior ensemble $\mathbf{X}^{p} = [\mathbf{x}_{1}^{p}, \mathbf{x}_{2}^{p}, ..., \mathbf{x}_{N}^{p}]$. It is assumed that the data form the vector **d** that has *m* elements. The vector $\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ is the random error in data characterized by the $m \times m$ error covariance matrix **R**.

The EnKF update consists of four basic steps.

1. Find the $n \times N$ covariance matrix **C** of ensemble predictions \mathbf{x}_i

2. Generate representative random data separately for each ensemble member: $\mathbf{d}_1 = \mathbf{d} + \varepsilon_1$, $\mathbf{d}_2 = \mathbf{d} + \varepsilon_2$, ..., $\mathbf{d}_N = \mathbf{d} + \varepsilon_N$, where the random vector ε belongs to the *n*-dimensional normal distribution $N(0,\mathbb{R})$.

3. Collect the random data in the $m \times N$ matrix $\mathbf{D} = [\mathbf{d}_1, \mathbf{d}_2, \dots, \mathbf{d}_N]$

4. Find the corrected predictions as:

$$\mathbf{X}^{\mathbf{p}} = \mathbf{X} + \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{H}\mathbf{x})$$
[7]

where the Kalman gain matrix K relates the variability in predictions and the data accuracy and is estimated as

$$\mathbf{K} = \mathbf{C}\mathbf{H}^{\mathbf{T}}(\mathbf{H}\mathbf{C}\mathbf{H}^{\mathbf{T}} + \mathbf{R})^{-1}$$
[8]

The one-dimensional case gives a general feel of how the ensemble Kalman filter works. Consider the case n = 1 and m = 1 when there is only one model-predicted state variable and its value is measured. All matrices then will become scalars, and **H** will be equal to 1. Let $x_i = \mu + \xi_i$, ξ_i belongs to $N(0, \sigma_x^2)$, and $d_i = d + \varepsilon_r$, ε_i belongs to $N(0, \sigma_d^2)$. The gain *K* will be

$$K = \frac{\sigma_x^2}{\sigma_x^2 + \sigma_d^2}$$
[9]

and

2

$$x_i^p = (1 - K)(\mu + \xi_i) + K(d + \varepsilon_i)$$
[10]

Values of *K* are between 0 and 1. The value of x_i^p is close to x_i when *K* is close to zero, that is, $\sigma_d^2 \gg \sigma_x^2$ and accuracy in data is much lower compared with the variability in predictions. On the contrary, the value of x_i^p is close to d_i when K is close to one, that is, $\sigma_x^2 \gg \sigma_d^2$ and accuracy in data is much higher than the variability in predictions.

In the application of the EnKF in this work, state variables were water contents at five depths, and therefore *n* was equal to five. The data vector varied in its size from one (assimilation from only one measurement depth, m = 1) to five (assimilation of measurements from all depths, m = 5). Since both model results and measurements were soil water contents, the matrix **H** had some diagonal elements h_{ii} (1 = 1,2...,5) equal to 1 and all other elements equal to zero. For example, only $h_{22} = 1$ and $h_{33} = 1$ if the measurements from the second and the third depth were used, and only $h_{11} = 1$ and $h_{44} = 1$ if measurements from the first and fourth depth were used. Computation of data errors and model errors is discussed below.

Soil Water Flow Model

The one-dimensional vertical soil water flow at the Bekkevoort experimental site was simulated with the Richards' equation

$$\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left[K(\theta) \left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial z} + 1 \right) \right]$$
[11]

where θ is the soil water content [L³ L⁻³]; *h* is the matric potential [L]; *K* is the hydraulic conductivity [L T⁻¹]; *z* is the vertical axis directed upward [L]; *t* is the time [T]. Soil water retention was described using the van Genuchten equation (van Genuchten, 1980):

$$\frac{\theta - \theta_r}{\theta_s - \theta_r} = \frac{1}{\left[1 + \left(\alpha \mid h \mid\right)^n\right]^m}$$
[12]

where θ_s , θ_r are saturated and residual soil water content [L³ L⁻³]; α [L⁻¹], *n*, *m* are van Genuchten water retention parameters. The hydraulic conductivity was computed from the van Genuchten– Mualem equation (van Genuchten, 1980):

$$K = K_{\text{sat}} \left(\frac{\theta - \theta_r}{\theta_s - \theta_r} \right)^l \left\{ 1 - \left[1 - \left(\frac{\theta - \theta_r}{\theta_s - \theta_r} \right)^{1/m} \right]^m \right\}^2 [13]$$

where K_{sat} is saturated hydraulic conductivity $[L T^{-1}]$, *l* is an empirical shape-defining parameter. The value of the parameter *m* was set to 1-1/n.

Equation [11] was solved numerically using the HYDRUS 1D software (Šimůnek et al., 2008). The atmospheric boundary with daily rainfall and evapotranspiration was set as the top boundary condition, and the free drainage boundary condition was set as the bottom boundary condition. The pressure head profile calculated from measured soil water content based on the van Genuchten equation was set as the initial condition. Predicted and updated state variables were water contents at five measurement depths averaged across the 12 observation locations at the beginning of the day of update.

Pedotransfer Functions to Develop the Ensemble of Models

Pedotransfer functions developed from large databases were used to generate parameters in the van Genuchten–Mualem parameterization of soil hydraulic properties in variably saturated soils (Eq. [12] and [13]). Parameters of the water retention function (Eq. [12]) were found from the six pedotransfer functions (Appendix) developed from the European continental database HYPRES (Wösten et al., 1999), subsets of the U.S. nationwide database (Gupta and Larson, 1979; Rawls et al., 1983), the nationwide Brazilian dataset (Tomasella and Hodnett, 1998), and the large national Hungarian database in which sandy loam and loam soils were well represented (Rajkai and Varallyay, 1992). The pedotransfer equations of water retention parameters are described in details in the Appendix. Four sets of K_{sat} values were used to create ensembles of models in this study (Appendix). The ensemble of 24 models (6 PTFs of water retention × 4 K_{sat} PTFs) was applied in soil moisture data assimilation with EnKF.

Temporal Stability of Water Contents and Data Error Estimates

The random error in data has to be characterized to apply the Kalman update method. In this work, the data are the average values of water contents across the trench at each of five observation depths. The observed time series of soil water contents were previously analyzed in the work of Pachepsky et al. (2005). Substantial temporal stability was found that manifested itself in the similarity of soil water content time series shapes in different locations at the same depth, and shifts of the time series graphs relative to each other along the water content axis (Fig. 2). Because the time series at the same depths were correlated, the "naive" computation of the covariance matrix of data errors D under the assumption of independence of data in different locations at the same depth could result in large inaccuracies (Wigley et al., 1984) since correlated observations result in inflated type 1 errors (Quinn and Keough, 2002). Therefore, the statistical model of the data was assumed in the form (Jacques et al., 2001):

$$\theta_{i,j}(t) = \mu_i(t) + b_{i,j} + \eta_{i,j}$$
[14]

where *i* is the subscript to denote depth, i = 15, 35, 55, 75, 95 cm, *j* is the subscript to denote location across the trench, j = 1,2,...,12, μ_i is the average water content at the depth "*i*", $b_{i,j}$ is the bias of the measurement in location *j* at the depth "*i*" relative to the average water content at this depth, and η_{ij} is the random component that is used to define the covariance matrix. The bias values were derived by fitting Eq. [14] to the whole observed time series (Table 1). Inspection of the Table 1 shows that the spatial distribution of the bias values is not random; zones of negative and positive bias can be delineated in soil 2D cross-section along the studied transect.

Study Design

Four groups of questions have been addressed in series of computations.

1. Are PTF-based models applicable at the site as is, without any calibration or data assimilation?

2. Can Richards' equation be calibrated to mimic the water flow at the site? Is the Richards' equation applicable?

3. Can DA with measurements at one or two depths result in a satisfactory reproduction of water content time series at other depths? Which depths are more efficient for soil water content DA? How does the DA time interval affect the overall accuracy of simulations?

4. Does DA improve results of simulations with calibrated models?



Fig. 2. Time series of time domain reflectometry (TDR)–(a–d) measured water contents at the 15-cm depth and (e) precipitation. Location numbers top to bottom: (a) 2, 3, 1; (b) 5, 6, 4; (c) 7, 8, 9; and (d) 11, 12, 10. Location numbering is shown in Fig. 1. Adopted from (Pachepsky et al., 2005).

To address these questions the ensemble of 24 models was run with soil water retention and saturated hydraulic conductivity parameters estimated with PTFs. Then, each of the water retention PTF was used, and the saturated hydraulic conductivity values for five depths were calibrated with the observations over 30-d observation period from Day 70 to 99. Next, the ensemble of 24 models was run with both soil water retention and saturated hydraulic conductivity parameters estimated with PTFs, and DA was performed with the ensemble Kalman filter algorithm (Eq. [7] and [8]) for daily, weekly, or biweekly updates. And finally, the ensemble of six PTFs with calibrated saturated hydraulic conductivities was run, and the ensemble Kalman filter was applied with weekly updates¹. The Shapiro–Wilk Test was used to determine if the simulated water contents and data errors were normally distributed at each depth on each assimilation date. The accuracy of simulations was characterized using the root mean squared error (RMSE) values computed as

$$\mathbf{RMSE} = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{N} \left(\theta_i^{(m)} - \theta_i^{(s)}\right)^2 / N}$$
[15]

where N is the number of simulated days, $\theta_i^{(m)}$ and $\theta_i^{(s)}$ are measured and simulated volumetric soil water contents at noon on the day "*i*".

Calibration of Models in the Ensemble

The Richards' Eq. [11] with the van Genuchten–Mualem hydraulic property models Eq. [12] and [13] was calibrated using the inverse solution option in the HYDRUS 1D software based on the Marquardt–Levenberg algorithm (Šimůnek et al., 2008). The saturated hydraulic conductivity values $K_{\rm sat}$ were subject to calibration separately for each of water retention PTFs; parameters of the water retention equation computed with water retention PTFs were not calibrated. The $K_{\rm sat}$ values were calibrated within depth intervals 0 to 25 cm, 25 to 45 cm, 45 to 65 cm, 65 to 85 cm, and >85 cm.

RESULTS

Applicability of Pedotransfer Function-based Models at the Site without Calibration or Data Assimilation

Ensemble simulations between Day 100 (10 Apr. 1998) and Day 247 (4 Sept. 1998) are summarized in Fig. 3. The PTF-based models appear to be incapable to simulate water flow at the site. Much more water is lost from the soil profile between the rainfall periods in simulations compared to measurements. Guber et al. (2009) observed a similar performance of the ensemble of PTFbased models used without calibration at this site.

Accuracy of Calibrated Models

Calibration of the saturated hydraulic conductivity values led to the successful simulation of water contents at all five depths (Fig. 4). The calibrated Richards' equation was an adequate model to predict soil water flow at the site, at least for precipitation and evaporation encountered during the observation period. Table 2 lists the calibrated $K_{\rm sat}$ values for each of six water retention PTFs. The calibrated $K_{\rm sat}$ values for each of six water retention et alibrated $K_{\rm sat}$ values for each of six of calibrated $K_{\rm sat}$ to some extent (Table 2). Comparison of calibrated $K_{\rm sat}$ with with PTF-based $K_{\rm sat}$ (Appendix) shows that all calibrated values of hydraulic conductivity were substantially smaller than the values predicted with pedotransfer functions.

¹ The FORTRAN code is available on request from the corresponding author.

Data Assimilation with the Noncalibrated Ensemble

Selected data assimilation results are shown in Fig. 5. Data assimilation provided an excellent update of weekly simulation results when the data from all depths were assimilated (Fig. 5a). Inspection of graphs in Fig. 5b and 5c shows that assimilation of measurements from the depth of 15 cm resulted in the same accuracy as assimilation of data from all depths and assimilation of measurements from the depth of 95 cm resulted in relatively large errors in the top of the profile. While the update was satisfactory, the simulations between update times deviated from measurements since parameters of the model were not changed.

The systematic overview of errors in simulations with the ensemble Kalman filter data assimilation is presented in Table 3. The largest simulation errors are found at the depths of 15 and 35 cm, the smallest at the depths of 75 and 95 cm. This happens because the magnitudes and rates of water content changes are much larger at the depth of 15 cm than at the depth of 95 cm. Therefore the deviations of ensemble simulations from measurements during the week between assimilations are much larger in the near-surface soil layers at depths of 15 and 35 cm.

Assimilation of the data from the depth of 35 cm resulted in an RMSE value which was the same or better than the one in the case of assimilation of the data from all depths. With the assimilation of data from only one depth, the accuracy at all depths generally decreased as the assimilation depths increased (Table 3). Assimilation of the data from the depth of 95 cm lead to the worst results in terms of the RMSE. Figure 5c shows that the errors stemmed from discrepancies between updates and measured water contents at shallow depths. The soil water dynamics observed at the depths of 75 and 95 cm did not capture changes occurring at smaller depths.

Interestingly, the simulation accuracy at the depth of 95 cm between the assimilation times was better when the data were assimilated from the depth of 15 cm as compared with assimilation from the depth of 95 cm. This probably happened because the errors caused with assimilation of data from 95 cm translated into substantial errors across the whole profile including the 95-cm depth during the week between updates.

Adding a second assimilation depth generally improved the accuracy of simulations at all depths in most cases, but could decrease the accuracy of simulations if the bottom measurement depths (75 or 95 cm) were added to the top measurement depths (15 or 35 cm) (Table 3). The smallest RMSEs of the water content simulations were obtained after the assimilation of data from (a) the 15-cm depth, (b) the 35-cm depth, (c) from two depths of 15 and 35 cm, and (d) from two depths of 15 and 55 cm (Table 3). However, assimilation of data from other depths was only marginally worse in terms of RMSE values (Table 3).

Biweekly data assimilation has led to the general increase of the simulation RMSE (Table 3). Similarly to the weekly assimilation, smaller RMSE were found when the data from top observation depths of 15 and 35 cm were assimilated. The difference in RMSE between the assimilation of data from the 15 cm depths and the assimilation from other depths was smaller

 Table 1. The bias values of the measurements in 12 locations at the five depths with respect to the average water content at each depth.

Time domain		Bias val	ues at the d	epths of	
reflectometry location	15 cm	35 cm	55 cm	75 cm	95 cm
1	-0.0191	0.0096	-0.0315	-0.0160	0.0152
2	0.0192	0.0103	-0.0039	0.0036	0.0184
3	0.0063	0.0104	-0.0146	-0.0104	0.0058
4	-0.0493	-0.0131	-0.0117	-0.0372	0.0164
5	0.0195	-0.0084	0.0069	0.0160	-0.0054
6	-0.0200	0.0101	0.0003	0.0150	0.0203
7	0.0111	-0.0430	0.0021	-0.0028	-0.0707
8	-0.0167	-0.0214	0.0071	0.0253	0.0083
9	-0.0177	-0.0165	0.0105	0.0009	0.0034
10	0.0149	0.0138	0.0085	0.0074	-0.0010
11	0.0302	0.0257	0.0029	0.0239	0.0041
12	0.0216	0.0223	0.0233	-0.0257	-0.0148

than in case of weekly updates. For example, assimilations of data from 15 cm and from 95 cm lead to the simulation RMSEs of 0.0369 cm³ cm⁻³ and 0.0401 cm³ cm⁻³, respectively, with biweekly updates, and to the simulation RMSEs of 0.0307 cm³ cm⁻³ and 0.0358 cm³ cm⁻³, respectively, with weekly updates.

Results of daily data assimilation are shown in Fig. 6. The daily update prevents the development of the simulation bias which has been well pronounced with weekly, and even more so, in biweekly updates (Fig. 5). Using the data from only one depth corrects results throughout the profile in case of daily updates as in a case of less frequent updates. However, using more than one sensor seems to be beneficial, since the use of only one sensor from the 15-cm depth leads to the exaggeration of water content dynamics at larger depths (Fig. 6b), and the use of the sensor from the 90-cm depth does not properly correct the simulated dynamics at 15- and 35-cm depths. The RMSE values for daily assimilation are shown in Table 3. They are substantially up to 12 times less than in the case of weekly simulations. The best overall result has been achieved when all five sensors have been used. The next best overall results have been obtained with pairs of sensors from 15 and 55 cm, and from 35 and 95 cm.

Data Assimilation with the Calibrated Ensemble

Results of data assimilation with calibrated models are summarized in Table 4. They are compared with results without calibration in the same table. Using calibrated models in the ensemble in case of weekly assimilation has resulted in much better overall accuracy as compared with the assimilation with noncalibrated models as the comparison of Tables 3 and 4 shows. The daily assimilation update without calibration, however, resulted in better accuracy than the weekly data assimilation with calibrated models.

Statistical Properties of Ensemble Simulations and Measurements

We note that both simulated water contents and data errors were mostly normally distributed. More than 99% of

Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *



Fig. 3. Comparison of measured and ensemble-simulated soil water contents. Neither calibration nor data assimilation has been applied.

data sets passed the normality test at the significance level of 0.01, indicating that the Kalman filter assumption of normal distributions was met for priors and for data. The absence of systematic trends in data errors was also assessed from the inspection of the correlation between the data errors at different



Fig. 4. Comparison of measured and simulated soil water contents. Calibration of saturated hydraulic conductivity has been applied.

depths (Table 5). Correlation coefficients between the data at different depths varied widely among the assimilation dates.

DISCUSSION

Considerable bias has been encountered in the results water flow simulations with the ensemble of pedotransfer functions for

Table 2. Calibrated values of the saturated hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat}) from simulations with six different pedotransfer functions for water retention.

Padatransfor function no	Padatrapfor function source	Madal		Calibrated K _{sat} (cm d ⁻¹) at depth				
redottatister function no.	redotramer function source	Model	15 cm	35 cm	55 cm	75 cm	95 cm	
1	Wösten et al. (1999)	VG†	4.95	0.93	0.69	2.21	2.56	
2	Wösten et al. (1999)	VG†	4.71	0.40	0.68	2.41	1.02	
3	Tomasella and Hodnett (1998)	WH→VG‡	3.89	1.55	1.22	1.05	1.35	
4	Gupta and Larson (1979)	WH→VG‡	2.44	0.39	0.50	0.95	0.85	
5	Rajkai and Varallyay (1992)	WH→VG‡	3.51	1.14	0.14	1.95	2.22	
6	Rawls et al. (1983)	WH→VG‡	1.21	0.16	0.47	0.89	0.94	

+ Parameters of the van Genuchten equation are estimated with the pedotransfer function.

Water contents at specific pressure heads are estimated, and then the van Genuchten equation is fitted to the estimates.



Fig. 5. Selected results of weekly ensemble simulations update; (a) update with assimilation of data from sensors from all five depths, (b) update with assimilation of data from sensors at the 15-cm depth, and (c) update with assimilation of data from the sensors at the 95-cm depth.

		Weekly	data assimi	ilation			Biweek	ly data assir	nilation			Daily	data assimil	lation	
Depth of		RMSE (volui	me %) at the	e depths of			RMSE (volu	me %) at th	he depths of			RMSE (volui	me %) at th	e depths of	
9019019	15 cm	35 cm	55 cm	75 cm	95 cm	15 cm	35 cm	55 cm	75 cm	95 cm	15 cm	35 cm	55 cm	75 cm	95 cm
cm															
15,35,55,75,95	3.12	2.98	2.47	1.17	1.06	3.72	3.66	3.27	1.95	1.79	0.52	0.35	0.27	0.45	0.23
15	3.07	3	2.53	1.26	1.17	3.69	3.66	3.3	1.99	1.85	0.41	0.79	0.89	0.9	0.68
35	3.09	2.97	2.45	1.17	1.06	3.7	3.64	3.26	1.95	1.79	0.76	0.45	0.48	0.95	0.69
55	3.18	3.02	2.49	1.21	1.1	3.75	3.68	3.28	1.97	1.8	1.21	0.83	0.31	0.73	0.48
75	3.52	3.39	2.9	1.47	1.34	3.97	3.91	3.54	2.15	1.97	2.43	2.23	1.71	0.31	0.41
95	3.58	3.44	2.97	1.53	1.35	4.01	3.93	3.58	2.19	1.98	2.47	2.22	1.71	0.42	0.29
15, 35	3.06	2.95	2.45	1.2	1.09	3.69	3.65	3.26	1.95	1.8	0.39	0.45	0.6	0.96	0.68
15, 55	3.07	2.96	2.44	1.18	1.07	3.7	3.65	3.26	1.94	1.79	0.56	0.51	0.26	0.74	0.46
15, 75	3.13	3.03	2.54	1.21	1.12	3.73	3.69	3.31	1.98	1.83	0.46	0.82	0.76	0.39	0.3
15, 95	3.11	3.02	2.53	1.22	1.11	3.74	3.69	3.32	1.98	1.82	0.45	0.78	0.7	0.55	0.23
35, 55	3.14	2.97	2.45	1.19	1.07	3.72	3.65	3.26	1.95	1.79	0.9	0.43	0.21	0.81	0.54
35, 75	3.13	2.98	2.47	1.17	1.07	3.73	3.67	3.29	1.96	1.8	0.7	0.46	0.48	0.49	0.3
35, 95	3.14	2.99	2.48	1.19	1.07	3.74	3.68	3.3	1.97	1.8	0.71	0.47	0.44	0.64	0.32
55, 75	3.18	3.02	2.5	1.19	1.09	3.76	3.69	3.29	1.97	1.8	1.18	0.85	0.41	0.41	0.21
55, 95	3.18	3.02	2.5	1.2	1.08	3.76	3.69	3.29	1.97	1.8	1.17	0.85	0.39	0.56	0.23
75, 95	3.53	3.38	2.89	1.46	1.31	3.98	3.91	3.54	2.15	1.96	2.38	2.14	1.63	0.28	0.31

Table 3. Root-mean-squared errors of soil water content simulations with weekly, biweekly, and daily data assimilation

our research site. Simulated water content values declined much faster than measurement (Fig. 1). The DA updates were bringing ensemble simulated water contents closer to measured, but the divergence between simulations and measurements occurred after each update. The reason for the divergence was the large difference between PTF-estimated and actual hydraulic conductivity. The large estimated hydraulic conductivity K_{sat} led to the fast emptying of the soil profile in simulations. The difference between calibrated and PTF predicted values of K_{sat} may be related to the fact that the K_{sat} pedotransfer functions were developed with the data from small soil samples (e.g., Rawls et al., 1998). It has been observed that K_{sat} may decrease with increasing measurement scale (e.g., Mallants et al., 1997). Another reason can be that we adopted the mean values of $K_{\rm sat}$ measured or fitted from a large dataset as the PTF-based $K_{\rm sat}$ values in this study and their standard deviations are large (Schaap and Leij, 1998; Carsel and Parrish, 1988). Yet another possible explanation can be that we observed and simulated mostly unsaturated flow, and in the van Genuchten-Mualem model (Eq. [13]), the effect of K_{sat} on the unsaturated hydraulic conductivity depends on the value of the tortuosity parameter *l*. We used the generic value of l = 0.5 in all simulations (van Genuchten, 1980), but this value was found to be both positive and negative and to vary in a wide range (Schaap and Leij, 2000). Values of l smaller than 0.5 increase the value of unsaturated hydraulic conductivity, and if the values of l in soil at the site were smaller than values of l in soils in experiments used to derive the K_{sat} PTF, relatively small K_{sat} would be sufficient to fit the unsaturated hydraulic conductivity in the observed ranges of water contents. Also, calibrated K_{sat} should reflect the set of van Genuchten water retention parameters which probably are different of van Genuchten parameters of soils used to develop the K_{sat} PTFs. We note that Jacques et al. (2002) who calibrated both water retention and hydraulic conductivity parameters for the soil of our study have found values of K_{sat} between 1 cm d⁻¹ and $4 \text{ cm } d^{-1}$ that is close to values we have obtained.

The observed bias in modeling results should affect the DA efficiency, since the data assimilation procedures, including EnKF, are developed assuming random errors both in data and in simulations; the presence of systematic errors in modeling results, however, is a common occurrence that data assimilation encounters (Dee, 2005). Such bias may arise not only from the parameter inaccuracy like in the case of our work. Ryu et al. (2009) showed that because of the nonlinearity of soil water models the bias can appear even if an ensemble of model forecasts originates from Gaussian variations. Bias in surface soil moisture states can lead to significant mass balance errors and degrade the performance of the EnKF analysis in deeper soil layers. Overall, bias-blind data assimilation appears to result in biased and noisy updates (Dee, 2005). The data assimilation to correct simultaneously both parameters and state variables, that is, hydraulic conductivity and soil water contents, may be a way to develop a reliable soil water model for a specific site (e.g., Montaldo and Albertson, 2003). Systematic procedures for

Electronic Filing - Received, Clerk's Office : 08/19/2014 - * * PC# 3018, Xbts A & B * *



Fig. 6. Selected results of daily ensemble simulations update; (a) update with assimilation of data from sensors from all five depths, (b) update with assimilation of data from sensors at the 15-cm depth, and (c) update with assimilation of data from the sensors at the 95-cm depth.

such dual estimation in hydrologic models were introduced by Moradkhani et al. (2005a, 2005b) and Vrugt et al. (2005). Data assimilation to determine parameters of Richards' equation was recently demonstrated with a synthetic dataset (Montzka et al., 2011). The authors showed that, in the assimilation of surface water content data, the bias can be affected by the availability of information about water contents in the lower part of the profile and by soil properties. Approaches designed to model bias per se to improve data assimilation results for state variables have also been proposed (e.g., Dee, 2005). Evaluating the bias removal methods to apply with data assimilation from soil water content sensors in the Richards' equation model presents an interesting avenue for further research.

The soil water content DA with the EnKF provided good results across the whole soil profile even when the data from one depth or from two depths were used for the assimilation (Fig. 5 and 6 and Tables 3 and 4). This feature makes EnKF DA in soil water flow modeling more attractive as compared with direct insertion and other DA methods (Das and Mohanty, 2006). This is probably due to the fact that the assumptions of the soil water flow model have been applicable to the site conditions during the observation period which did not include events

Pedotransfer	Sensor	RMSE (volume %) at the depth of							
function or ensemble	depth	15 cm	35 cm	55 cm	75 cm	95 cm			
			No	data assimi	lation				
PTF 1	nat	1.03	0.93	1.16	0.82	0.57			
PTF 2	na	1.22	1.04	0.84	1.04	0.58			
PTF 3	na	1.89	0.79	0.82	1.19	0.58			
PTF 4	na	1.11	0.96	0.9	0.89	0.63			
PTF 5	na	1.47	1.34	1.54	1.67	1.36			
PTF 6	na	1.4	1.51	1.08	1.03	0.84			
			Weekl	y data assi	milation				
Ensemble	All	0.74	0.8	0.7	0.64	0.37			
Ensemble	15 cm	0.75	0.88	0.83	0.73	0.43			
Ensemble	35 cm	0.81	0.76	0.71	0.72	0.45			
Ensemble	55 cm	0.86	0.77	0.72	0.71	0.46			
Ensemble	75 cm	0.77	0.86	0.82	0.7	0.43			
Ensemble	95 cm	0.8	0.87	0.85	0.73	0.38			
Ensemble	15,35 cm	0.69	0.87	0.83	0.79	0.49			
Ensemble	15,55 cm	0.72	0.84	0.79	0.72	0.48			
Ensemble	15,75 cm	0.74	0.86	0.82	0.68	0.38			
Ensemble	15,95 cm	0.7	0.86	0.82	0.75	0.43			
Ensemble	35,55 cm	0.9	0.75	0.71	0.72	0.47			
Ensemble	35,75 cm	0.85	0.76	0.76	0.69	0.38			
Ensemble	35,95 cm	0.84	0.78	0.78	0.76	0.43			
Ensemble	55,75 cm	0.88	0.78	0.71	0.67	0.39			
Ensemble	55,95 cm	0.86	0.81	0.72	0.68	0.35			
Ensemble	75,95 cm	0.8	0.86	0.82	0.68	0.36			

 Table 4. Root-mean-squared errors of soil water content simulations with calibrated models.

+ na, not applicable.

conducive for preferential flow or long dry spells when Richards' equation might not be applicable. Satisfactory results across the whole soil profile were obtained from the assimilation of water contents at the top of the profile. This is in line with results and conclusion of works that have used the EnKF to assimilate the remotely sensed data at the soil surface to reproduce the water contents in soil profile (Das and Mohanty, 2006). If the physics is right then the model is able to capture the process if the boundary conditions are corrected. Crow and Wood (2003) noted that inadequacies in land surface model physics can create specific challenges in assimilation of soil surface water content data. However, the assimilated water content does not need to be measured on soil surface. In essence, a single soil water sensor or tensiometer can provide enough information to correct the performance of a physically-based soil hydraulic model for the whole soil profile. The top part of the profile was the preferable location of the sensors for assimilation in this work. However, the research site had no vegetation and soil water dynamics was not affected by shallow groundwater or by intensive evaporation. Should soil water dynamics be very different from the one in this work, a site-specific research would be needed to establish preferable locations of soil water content sensors.

Using the information about the temporal stability of soil water content measurements was essential for the data assimilation procedure. The "naive" standard errors

Table 5. Correlation coefficients between water contents measured at five depths after the removal of bias according the temporal stability model.

					Correlatio	n coefficient				
Time		15	cm			35 cm		55	cm	75 cm
	35 cm	55 cm	75 cm	95 cm	55 cm	75 cm	95 cm	75 cm	95 cm	95 cm
days										
100	0.586	0.070	0.823	0.681	0.234	0.243	0.601	-0.085	0.534	0.441
107	0.705	-0.169	0.704	0.755	0.309	0.346	0.709	-0.260	0.191	0.634
114	0.516	-0.203	-0.050	0.526	-0.415	0.378	0.151	-0.332	0.179	0.210
121	0.762	-0.135	0.732	0.608	-0.280	0.782	0.775	-0.411	0.150	0.474
128	0.836	0.069	0.549	0.622	-0.009	0.661	0.632	-0.203	-0.066	0.772
135	0.552	-0.151	0.382	0.311	-0.185	0.199	0.099	-0.585	0.251	0.009
142	0.608	-0.141	0.255	0.055	0.149	0.059	-0.025	-0.331	0.569	0.091
149	0.122	-0.069	-0.092	-0.275	0.345	-0.169	0.198	0.197	0.253	-0.120
156	0.746	0.236	0.436	0.061	-0.008	0.588	0.377	-0.376	-0.030	0.132
163	0.197	0.191	-0.116	0.093	0.416	-0.133	0.018	-0.011	-0.060	0.512
170	0.192	0.284	-0.154	0.081	-0.022	0.400	0.270	-0.239	0.188	0.506
177	0.823	0.131	0.185	0.049	0.388	0.210	0.209	-0.210	0.308	0.365
184	0.539	0.160	-0.355	-0.456	0.097	0.035	0.033	-0.196	0.542	0.516
191	0.424	-0.215	0.280	-0.132	-0.028	0.209	0.175	0.067	0.406	-0.131
198	0.261	-0.069	0.087	0.288	0.492	0.243	-0.305	0.473	-0.218	-0.068
205	0.534	0.426	0.155	-0.082	0.738	0.237	0.265	0.081	0.263	0.382
212	0.723	0.210	-0.094	-0.602	-0.053	0.031	-0.206	0.052	-0.457	0.516
219	0.650	0.223	0.500	0.059	-0.150	0.591	-0.040	0.253	-0.029	0.289
226	0.666	0.096	0.591	0.046	-0.243	0.592	-0.013	0.161	-0.075	0.253
233	0.652	0.446	0.779	0.173	-0.110	0.588	-0.023	0.444	0.002	0.300
240	0.506	0.435	0.419	0.110	0.762	0.667	-0.247	0.631	0.105	0.173
247	-0.076	0.109	-0.011	0.288	0.540	0.605	0.616	0.405	0.508	0.637

of soil water contents at the five observation depths (15, 35, 55, 75, and 95 cm) were in the ranges 0.022 to 0.030, 0.017 to 0.023, 0.013 to 0.019, 0.019 to 0.023, and 0.020 to 0.028, respectively. The standard errors of the noise values in Eq. [2] for the same depths in the same order ranged from 0.004 to 0.011, 0.003 to 0.012, 0.003 to 0.009, 0.004 to 0.012, and 0.003 to 0.007. On average the standard errors of noise were about 30% of the naive standard errors. These results are similar to results of Starr (2005) who worked at the coarser scale and found that the temporal stability model explained 47% of the observed variability in soil water content whereas an additional 20% of the variability was attributed to random measurement error. Using errors of noise instead of naive errors in this work made the uncertainty in soil water content data about one order of magnitude smaller than the uncertainty in modeling results and caused the updated modeling results to be close to measurements. We realize that there was some underestimation of the data error in this work because the errors of the TDR measurement per se were not considered.

Decrease in the estimated measurement noise is achieved if the temporal stability model (Eq. [14]) is applicable. Appropriateness of this model depends on location and number of sensors. If sensor locations are such that the applicability temporal stability model is limited, the bias values may be inaccurate and noise values may be excessively large and updates will not lead to significant changes in simulated water contents. Sensor placement may also affect the value of the average water content that is used in updates with Kalman gain matrix (Eq. [7] and [8]). Although there were suggestions on the selection of locations where soil water content sensors should be placed to record values of water content close to the average over the study area (Grayson and Western, 1998; Jacobs et al., 2004), there are no general recommendations on selection of such sensor locations. The additional difficulty is that locations for sensors representing average over the study area may be different for different soil depths (Guber et al., 2008). Finding the environmental factors that may indicate probable locations of representative soil moisture measurements will help to decrease the number of sensors and improve the effectiveness of the soil water content data assimilation.

Several arbitrary choices were made in the design of this work. They included the decision to calibrate only saturated hydraulic conductivity rather than conductivity and water retention, limit the calibration period to 30 d, limit the number of water retention PTFs to six, and the number of $K_{\rm sat}$ values to four. We demonstrated that calibrating only saturated hydraulic conductivity values provides high accuracy of ensemble simulations. Calibrating van Genuchten water retention parameters could further improve accuracy of simulations with PTFs as it was shown for this dataset in the comprehensive calibration study (Jacques et al., 2002). However, calibrating 30 (four in Eq. [12] and two in Eq. [13] at five depths) requires using long time series to capture both long drying and extreme wetting events. The data assimilation needs to be applied just because

accumulation of such exhaustive dataset takes time and may not be feasible with available resources. The number of calibrated parameters could be decreased by decreasing the number of hydrologically different layers, for example, setting this number equal to the number of soil genetic horizons as shown in Fig. 1. However, the differences in texture and organic carbon (OC) at different depths within horizons that we encountered would be ignored in such case. The number of models in ensemble has not been varied although it is known that the accuracy of assimilation results is affected by the increase of ensemble size (Houtekamer and Mitchell, 1998). We demonstrated that the satisfactory data assimilation from single depths is possible with the 24 models in the ensemble. However, this number has to be researched in specific applications. We have also not attempted to apply the quickly developing techniques of model calibration with data assimilation (Montzka et al., 2011) which represent a very promising avenue for soil hydrology research.

Data assimilation methods other than EnKF can also be applied to assimilate soil water contents measurements in soil water flow simulations. Sabater et al. (2007) compared several methods of DA for a soil-vegetation-atmosphere model with two soil layers and concluded that the EnKF was one of the best to use. However, it is not known how model specific such conclusions may be. The need in using other than EnKF DA methods may be caused by model-specific violations of the EnKF assumptions. Specifically, EnKF requires the normality of model and data errors distributions (Eq. [2] and [4]). The distributions of water contents simulated with the PTF generated model ensemble conformed to the normality hypothesis in the majority of cases. However, in some cases simulated soil water contents were not normally distributed. This percentage may be different in other soils and with other weather conditions. The DA methods, such as particle filtering, were proposed that do not require normality and the empirical distributions are generated from Monte Carlo simulations. These methods generally require the number of ensemble numbers much larger than EnKF (Weerts and El Serafy, 2005). Since the number of available PTFs is relatively small (Pachepsky and Rawls, 2004), a further research is needed to establish a procedure of creating large ensembles with relatively small numbers of PTFs.

CONCLUSIONS

Overall, this work demonstrated that bringing together developments in pedotransfer functions, temporal stability of soil water patterns, and soil water content sensors can create a new source of data to improve modeling results in soil hydrology and related fields. We observed that pedotransfer functions for saturated hydraulic conductivity in combination with the standard Mualem–van Genuchten model of unsaturated hydraulic conductivity created substantial bias in simulations of water contents in soil profile. Caution has to be exercised in using $K_{\rm sat}$ PTFs, and they may need further development to be used in applications at the pedon or the field scale. Assimilation of soil water content sensor data appeared to be very effective

in correcting soil water content profiles simulated with the Richards' equation based model; small number of sensors was sufficient to correct the simulated profile. The efficiency of assimilation increased with the frequency of updates.

APPENDIX

Six PTFs were used to estimate the water retention parameters in this study to develop the ensemble of models. The PTFs with input soil properties are listed in Table A.1. Two PTFs developed by Wösten et al. (1999) estimate the parameters of van Genuchten equation (Eq. [12]), and another four PTFs derive the van Genuchten parameters by fitting Eq. [12] to the estimated water contents at selected capillary pressures (Tomasella and Hodnett, 1998; Gupta and Larson, 1979; Rajkai and Varallyay, 1992; Rawls et al., 1983). The details of the six pedotransfer equations are listed below. The PTFs were used with textural composition shown in Fig. 1, OC contents of 2.2, 0.8, 0.4, 0.3, and 0.6% at depths of 15, 35, 55, 75, and 95 cm, respectively, and bulk density by soil horizons Ap, C1, and C2 of 1.42, 1.54, and 1.53 g cm⁻³, respectively.

Wösten et al. (1999) derived class PTFs based on the all-Europe database HYPRES and the van Genuchten parameters were obtained by fitting Eq. [12] to geometric mean water contents for five textural groups (Table 2 of Guber and Pachepsky, 2010). Wösten et al. (1999) also derived regression equations to estimate the van Genuchten parameters from soil texture, OC, and soil bulk density (ρ_b) (Eq. [27], [28], [29] in Guber and Pachepsky, 2010; not included here because of their size).

Tomasella and Hodnett (1998) derived regression parameters for water content (θ) at nine values of soil matric potential based on the nationwide Brazilian soil database:

$\theta = 0.01(a \times OC + b \times silt + c \times clay + d)$ [A.1]

where *a*, *b*, *c*, and *d* are regression coefficients listed in Table 3 of (Guber and Pachepsky, 2010).

Rawls et al. (1983) developed 12 regression equations to relate the soil water contents at 12 capillary pressures to sand, clay, OC contents, and bulk density using the U.S. Cooperative Soil Survey Database from Rawls et al. (1982):

$$\theta = a + b \times \text{sand} + c \times \text{clay} + d \times \text{OC} + e \times \rho_b$$
 [A.2]

where *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, and *e* are coefficients of the linear regression equations listed in Table 5 of Guber and Pachepsky (2010).

Gupta and Larson (1979) derived predictive equations for the water content at 12 capillary pressures using a subset of the U.S. National Cooperative Survey database:

$$\theta = a \times \text{sand} + b \times \text{silt} + c \times \text{clay} + d \times \text{OC} + e \times \rho_b$$
 [A.3]

where a, b, c, d, and e are coefficients of the linear regression equations to predict soil water content at specific capillary pressure listed in Table 6 of Guber and Pachepsky (2010).

Rajkai and Varallyay (1992) developed a nonlinear regression equation for 10 matric potential levels using a Hungarian nationwide database:

$$\theta = b_0 + b_1 X_1 + b_2 X_2 + b_3 X_1 X_2 + b_4 X_1^2 + b_5 X_2^2$$
 [A.4]

where b_0 , b_1 , b_2 , b_3 , b_4 , b_5 , and X_1 , X_2 are coefficients and variables of the nonlinear regression equations, respectively. The coefficients and variables at eight capillary pressures used in this study are listed in Table 7 of Guber and Pachepsky (2010).

The K_{sat} values were estimated (a) based on textural class and bulk density according to the table developed from a large U.S. nationwide database (Rawls et al., 1998), (b) as the average values of K_{sat} found from three large databases (Schaap and Leij, 1998), (c) from clay and sand contents with regression equations developed from a large dataset of Soil Conservation Service (SCS) Soil Survey Information Reports (Carsel and Parrish, 1988), and (d) from fitting the van Genuchten-Mualem equation to geometric mean water contents developed using the European continental database HYPRES (Wösten et al., 1999). Estimation results are shown in Table A.2.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This work was partially supported by the Interagency Agreement between U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission and USDA Agricultural Research Service.

Table A.1. List of soil water retention pedotransfer functions (PTFs) and estimated parameters α and *n* in the van Genuchten equation.

				Tomasella	Gupta and	Rajkai and	
PTF	Depth	Wösten e	et al. (1999)	and Hodnett	Larson	Varallyay	Rawls
				(1998)	(1979)	(1992)	et al. (1903)
Model		VG†	VG†	WH→VG‡	WH→VG‡	WH→VG‡	WH→VG‡
Clay, %		+			+	+	+
Silt, %		+	+	+	+	+	+
Sand, %		+	+	+	+	+	+
Organic C, %)		+	+	+		+
Bulk density,	g cm⁻³		+		+	+	+
α (1/ <i>m</i>)	15 cm	0.0249	0.0436	0.1705	0.0281	0.0084	0.0532
	35 cm	0.0314	0.0404	0.1118	0.0405	0.0064	0.0477
	55 cm	0.0314	0.045	0.1034	0.0488	0.0061	0.0527
	75 cm	0.0314	0.0394	0.0734	0.0353	0.0059	0.0394
	95 cm	0.0314	0.028	0.0515	0.0192	0.0062	0.03
n	15 cm	1.1689	1.2214	1.2097	1.4158	1.1827	1.2916
	15 cm	1.1804	1.2537	1.2173	1.3566	1.1672	1.3455
	55 cm	1.1804	1.2593	1.2339	1.3385	1.182	1.3567
	75 cm	1.1804	1.2376	1.2318	1.3188	1.1214	1.3474
	95 cm	1.1804	1.2548	1.2259	1.368	1.0737	1.3539

+ Parameters of the van Genuchten equation are estimated with the pedotransfer function
+ Water contents at specific pressure heads are estimated, and then the van Genuchten equation is fitted to the estimates.

Table A.2. List of saturated hydraulic conductivity fromliterature pedotransfer functions.

No	Deference	Saturated hydraulic conductivity				
INO.	Kelerence	Sandy loam	Loam			
		– cm	ı d ⁻¹ -			
1	Rawls et al. (1998)	55.0	12.5			
2	Schaap and Leij (1998)	38.0	12.0			
3	Carsel and Parrish (1988)	106.0	25.0			
4	Wösten et al. (1999)	12.1	10.8			

REFERENCES

- Aboitiz, M., J.W. Labadie, and D.F. Heermann. 1986. Stochastic sol moisture estimation and forecasting for irrigated fields. Water Resour. Res. 22:180– 190. doi:10.1029/WR022i002p00180
- Carsel, R.F., and R.S. Parrish. 1988. Developing joint probability distributions of soil water retention characteristics. Water Resour. Res. 24:755–769. doi:10.1029/WR024i005p00755
- Crow, W.T., and E. Van Loon. 2006. The impact of incorrect model error assumptions on the sequential assimilation of remotely sensed surface soil moisture. J. Hydrometeorol. 8:421–431. doi:10.1175/JHM499.1
- Crow, W.T., and E.F. Wood. 2003. The assimilation of remotely sensed soil brightness temperature imagery into a land surface model using Ensemble Kalman filtering: A case study based on ESTAR measurements during SGP97. Adv. Water Resour. 26:137–149. doi:10.1016/S0309-1708(02)00088-X
- Das, N.N., and B.P. Mohanty. 2006. Root zone soil moisture assessment using remote sensing and vadose zone modeling. Vadose Zone J. 5:296–307. doi:10.2136/vzj2005.0033
- Dee, D.P. 2005. Bias and data assimilation. Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc. C 131:3323– 3343. doi:10.1256/qj.05.137
- Entekhabi, D., H. Nakamura, and E.G. Njoku. 1994. Solving the inverse-problem for soil moisture and temperature profiles by sequential assimilation of multifrequency remotely sensed observations. IEEE Geosci. Remote Sens. 32:438–448. doi:10.1109/36.295058
- Evensen, G. 1994. Sequential data assimilation with a non-linear quasigeostrophic model using Monte Carlo methods to forecast error statistics. J. Geophys. Res. 99:10143–10162. doi:10.1029/94JC00572
- FAO. 1975. Soil map of the world at 1:5,000,000. Vol. 1. Europe. FAO, Rome.
- Fares, A., H. Hamdhani, V. Polyakov, A. Dogan, and H. Valenzuela. 2006. Realtime soil water monitoring for optimum water management. J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc. 42:1527–1535. doi:10.1111/j.1752-1688.2006.tb06018.x
- Grayson, R.B., and A.W. Western. 1998. Towards areal estimation of soil water content from point measurements: Time and space stability of mean response. J. Hydrol. 207:68–82. doi:10.1016/S0022-1694(98)00096-1
- Guber, A.K., T.J. Gish, Y.A. Pachepsky, M.Th. van Genuchten, C.S. Daughtry, T.J. Nicholson, and R.E. Cady. 2008. Temporal stability of soil water content and soil water flux across agricultural fields. Catena 73:125–133. doi:10.1016/j.catena.2007.09.010
- Guber, A.K., and Y.A. Pachepsky. 2010. Multimodeling with pedotransfer functions. Documentation and user manual for PTF calculator (CalcPTF), Version 2.0. Beltsville Agricultural Research Center, USDA-ARS. http:// www.ars.usda.gov/SP2UserFiles/ad_hoc/12655300EnvironmentalTransp ort/CalcPTFFiles/PTF_Manual.version_2.0.pdf (accessed 24 Feb. 2012).
- Guber, A.K., Y.A. Pachepsky, M.Th. van Genuchten, W.J. Rawls, D. Jacques, J. Simunek, R.E. Cady, and T.J. Nicholson. 2006. Field-scale water flow simulations using ensembles of pedotransfer functions for soil water retention. Vadose Zone J. 5:234–247. doi:10.2136/vzj2005.0111
- Guber, A.K., Y.A. Pachepsky, M.Th. van Genuchten, J. Simunek, D. Jacques, A. Nemes, T.J. Nicholson, and R.E. Cady. 2009. Multimodel simulation of water flow in a field soil using pedotransfer functions. Vadose Zone J. 8:1–10. doi:10.2136/vzj2007.0144
- Gupta, S.C., and W.E. Larson. 1979. Estimating soil water retention characteristics from particle-size distribution, organic matter percent, and bulk density. Water Resour. Res. 15:1633–1635. doi:10.1029/WR015i006p01633
- Hamill, T.M., J.S. Whitaker, and X. Wei. 2004. Ensemble re-forecasting: Improving medium-range forecast skill using retrospective forecasts. Mon. Weather Rev. 132:1434–1447. doi:10.1175/1520-0493(2004)1322.0.CO;2

- Heathman, G.C., P.J. Starks, L.R. Ahuja, and T.J. Jackson. 2003. Assimilation of surface soil moisture to estimate profile soil water content. J. Hydrol. 279:1–17. doi:10.1016/S0022-1694(03)00088-X
- Houser, P.R., W.J. Shuttleworth, J.S. Famiglietti, H.V. Gupta, K.H. Syed, and D.C. Goodrich. 1998. Integration of soil moisture remote sensing and hydrologic modeling using data assimilation. Water Resour. Res. 34:3405– 3420. doi:10.1029/1998WR900001
- Houtekamer, P.L., and H.L. Mitchell. 1998. Data assimilation using an ensemble Kalman filter technique. Mon. Weather Rev. 126:796–811. doi:10.1175/1520-0493(1998)1262.0.CO;2
- Huang, C., X. Li, L. Lu, and J. Gu. 2008. Experiments of one-dimensional soil moisture assimilation system based on ensemble Kalman filter. Remote Sens. Environ. 112:888–900. doi:10.1016/j.rse.2007.06.026
- Jacobs, J.M., B.P. Mohanty, E.C. Hsu, and D. Miller. 2004. SMEX02: Field scale variability, time stability and similarity of soil water. Remote Sens. Environ. 92:436–446. doi:10.1016/j.rsc.2004.02.017
- Jacques, D. 2000. Analysis of water flow and solute transport at the field scale. Ph.D. thesis no. 454. Faculteit Landbouwkundige en Toegepaste Wetenschappen, K.U. Leuven, Belgium.
- Jacques, D., B. Mohanty, A. Timmerman, and J. Feyen. 2001. Study of time dependency of factors affecting the spatial distribution of soil water content in a field-plot. Phys. Chem. Earth (B) 26:629–634. doi:10.1016/ S1464-1909(01)00060-0
- Jacques, D., J. Simunek, A. Timmerman, and J. Feyen. 2002. Calibration of Richards' and convection-dispersion equations to field-scale water flow and solute transport under rainfall conditions. J. Hydrol. 259:15–31. doi:10.1016/S0022-1694(01)00591-1
- Kalman, R.E. 1960. A new approach to linear filtering and prediction problems. J. Basic Eng, 82:35–45. doi:10.1115/1.3662552
- Kelleners, T.J., R.W.O. Soppe, J.E. Ayars, J. Šimůnek, and T.H. Skaggs. 2005. Inverse analysis of upward water flow in a groundwater table lysimeter. Vadose Zone J. 4:558–572. doi:10.2136/vzj2004.0118
- Lahoz, W., B. Khattatov, and R. Ménard, editors. 2010. Data assimilation: Making sense of observations. Springer, New York.
- Mallants, D., D. Jacques, P. Tseng, M.Th. van Genuchten, and J. Feyen. 1997. Comparison of hydraulic measurements using three sizes of soil cores. J. Hydrol. 199:295–318. doi:10.1016/S0022-1694(96)03331-8
- Mandell, J. 2007. A brief tutorial on the ensemble Kalman filter. Cornell Univ. http://arxiv.org/PS_cache/arxiv/pdf/0901/0901.3725v1.pdf (accessed 24 Feb. 2012).
- Montaldo, N., and J.D. Albertson. 2003. Multi-scale assimilation of surface soil moisture data for robust root zone moisture prediction. Adv. Water Resour. 26:33–44. doi:10.1016/S0309-1708(02)00103-3
- Montzka, C., H. Moradkhani, L. Weihermüller, H.-J. Hendricks Franssen, M. Canty, and H. Vereecken. 2011. Hydraulic parameter estimation by remotely-sensed top soil moisture observations with the particle filter. J. Hydrol. 399:410–421. doi:10.1016/j.jhydrol.2011.01.020
- Moradkhani, H., K. Hsu, H.V. Gupta, and S. Sorooshian. 2005b. Uncertainty assessment of hydrologic model states and parameters: Sequential data assimilation using particle filter. Water Resour. Res. 41:W05012 10.1029/2004WR003604. doi:10.1029/2004WR003604
- Moradkhani, H., S. Sorooshian, H.V. Gupta, and P. Houser. 2005a. Dual stateparameter estimation of hydrological models using ensemble Kalman filter. Adv. Water Resour. 28:135–147. doi:10.1016/j.advwatres.2004.09.002
- Ng, G.-H.C., D. McLaughlin, D. Entekhabi, and B. Scanlon. 2009. Using data assimilation to identify diffuse recharge mechanisms from chemical and physical data in the unsaturated zone. Water Resour. Res. 45:W09409 10.1029/2009WR007831. doi:10.1029/2009WR007831
- Or, D., and R.J. Hanks. 1992. Spatial and temporal soil water estimation considering soil variability and evapotranspiration uncertainty. Water Resour. Res. 28:803–814. doi:10.1029/91WR02585
- Pachepsky, Y.A., A.K. Guber, and D. Jacques. 2005. Temporal persistence in vertical distributions of soil moisture contents. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 69:347–352. doi:10.2136/sssaj2005.0347
- Pachepsky, Y.A., and W.J. Rawls, editors. 2004. Development of pedotransfer functions in soil hydrology. Elsevier, Amsterdam.
- Quinn, G.P., and M.J. Keough, editors. 2002. Experimental design and data analysis for biologists. Cambridge Univ. Press, New York.
- Rajkai, K., and G. Varallyay. 1992. Estimating soil water retention from simpler properties by regression techniques. In: M.Th. van Genuchten et al.,

editors, Proceedings International Workshop on Indirect Methods for Estimating the Hydraulic Properties of Unsaturated Soils, Riverside, CA. 11–13 Oct. 1989. Univ. of California, Riverside. p. 417–416.

- Rawls, W.J., D.L. Brakensiek, and K.E. Saxton. 1982. Estimation of soil water properties. Trans. ASAE 25:1316–1320.
- Rawls, W.J., D.L. Brakensiek, and B. Soni. 1983. Agricultural management effects on soil water processes. Part I. Soil water retention and Green-Ampt parameters. Trans. ASAE 26:1747–1752.
- Rawls, W.J., D. Giménez, and R. Grossman. 1998. Use of soil texture, bulk density, and slope of the water retention curve to predict saturated hydraulic conductivity. Trans. ASAE 41:983–988.
- Ryu, D., W.T. Crow, X. Zhan, and T.J. Jackson. 2009. Correcting unintended perturbation biases in hydrologic data assimilation. J. Hydrometeorol. 10:734–750. doi:10.1175/2008JHM1038.1
- Sabater, J.M., L. Jarlan, J.-C. Calvet, F. Bouyssel, and P. de Rosnay. 2007. From near-surface to root-zone soil moisture using different assimilation techniques. J. Hydrometeorol. 8:194–206. doi:10.1175/JHM571.1
- Santanello, J.A., Jr., C.D. Peters-Lidard, M.E. Garcia, D.M. Mocko, M.A. Tischler, M.S. Moran, and D.P. Thoma. 2007. Using remotely-sensed estimates of soil moisture to infer soil texture and hydraulic properties across a semi-arid watershed. Remote Sens. Environ. 110:79–97. doi:10.1016/j.rse.2007.02.007
- Schaap, M.G., and F.J. Leij. 1998. Database-realated accuracy and uncertainty of pedotransfer functions. Soil Sci. 163:765–779. doi:10.1097/00010694-199810000-00001
- Schaap, M.G., and F.J. Leij. 2000. Improved prediction of unsaturated hydraulic conductivity with the Mualem-van Genuchten model. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 64:843–851. doi:10.2136/sssaj2000.643843x
- Schaffer, B. 1998. Flooding responses and water-use efficiency of subtropical and tropical fruit trees in an environmentally sensitive wetland. Ann. Bot. (London) 81:475–481. doi:10.1006/anbo.1998.0593
- Šimůnek, J., M. Šejna, H. Saito, M. Sakai, and M.Th. van Genuchten. 2008. The HYDRUS-1D software package for simulating the one-dimensional movement of water, heat, and multiple solutes in variably-saturated media. Version 4.0. Univ. of California, Riverside.
- Starr, G.C. 2005. Assessing temporal stability and spatial variability of soil water patterns with implications for precision water management. Agric. Water Manage. 72:223–243. doi:10.1016/j.agwat.2004.09.020

- Tomasella, J., and M.G. Hodnett. 1998. Estimating soil water retention characteristics from limited data in Brazilian Amazonia. Soil Sci. 163:190– 202. doi:10.1097/00010694-199803000-00003
- van Genuchten, M.Th. 1980. A closed-form equation for predicting the hydraulic conductivity of unsaturated soils. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 44:892–898. doi:10.2136/sssaj1980.03615995004400050002x
- Vereecken, H., J.A. Huisman, H. Bogena, J. Vanderborght, J.A. Vrugt, and J.W. Hopmans. 2008. On the value of soil moisture measurements in vadose zone hydrology: A review. Water Resour. Res. 44:W00D06 10.1029/2008WR006829. doi:10.1029/2008WR006829
- Vrugt, J.A., C.G.H. Diks, H.V. Gupta, W. Bouten, and J.M. Verstraten. 2005. Improved treatment of uncertainty in hydrologic modeling: Combining the strengths of global optimization and data assimilation. Water Resour. Res. 41:W01017 10.1029/2004WR003059. doi:10.1029/2004WR003059
- Walker, J.P., G.R. Willgoose, and J.D. Kalma. 2001a. One-dimensional soil moisture profile retrieval by assimilation of near-surface measurements: A simplified soil moisture model and field application. J. Hydrometeorol. 2:356–373. doi:10.1175/1525-7541(2001)0022.0.CO;2
- Walker, J.P., G.R. Willgoose, and J.D. Kalma. 2001b. One-dimensional soil moisture profile retrieval by assimilation of near surface observations: A comparison of retrieval algorithms. Adv. Water Resour. 24:631–650. doi:10.1016/S0309-1708(00)00043-9
- Weerts, A.H., and G.Y.H. El Serafy. 2005. Particle filtering and ensemble Kalman filtering for state updating with hydrological conceptual rainfall-runoff models. Water Resour. Res. 42:W09403 10.1029/2005WR004093. doi:10.1029/2005WR004093
- Wendroth, O., H. Rogasik, S. Koszinski, C.J. Ritsema, L.W. Dekker, and D.R. Nielsen. 1999. State-space prediction of field-scale soil water content time series in a sandy loam. Soil Tillage Res. 50:85–93. doi:10.1016/S0167-1987(98)00201-3
- Wigley, T.M.L., K.R. Briffa, and P.D. Jones. 1984. On the average value of correlated time series with applications in Dendroclimatology and Hydrometeorology. J. Clim. Appl. Meteorol. 23:201–213. doi:10.1175/1520-0450(1984)0232.0.CO;2
- Wösten, J.H.M., A. Lilly, A. Nemes, and C. Le Bas. 1999. Development and use of a database of hydraulic properties of European soils. Geoderma 90:169– 185. doi:10.1016/S0016-7061(98)00132-3